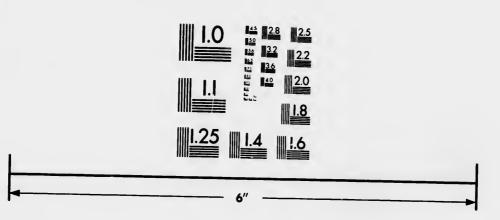


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580 (716) 872-4503

OTHER STATE OF THE STATE OF THE

CIHM Microfiche Series (Monographs)

ICMH
Collection de microfiches (monographies)



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadian de microreproductions historiques



(C) 1993

# Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

T p c fi

O b th si oi fil si oi

Th sh TI W

Madifi en be rig red me

12:	x	16X		20×		24X		28×		32 X
10X	14X		18X		22 X		26X		30 ×	
Ce document e	st filmé au tau:	x de réduct	ion indiqué (	ci-dessous.						
This item is file	ned at the redu	estion ratio		. ,						
	taires supplém									
Addition	al comments:/					iqui	- (bei ionidi	es, de la li	vraison	
						Masthead Générique	/ e (pėriodigu	ige) de le 1		
pas été f	ilmėes.									
mais, lor	sque cela était	possible, co	es pages n'on	it .		Caption o	of issue/ lépart de la	livraison		
lors d'ur	t que cerraines ne restauration	pages blan apparaisser	cnes ajoutée it dans le ter	te.	<b></b>					
been om	itted from film	ning/				Page de t	itre de la liv	raison		
within t	he text. When	ever possible	le, these have	è	Γ	7 Title page	e of issue/			
Blank le	aves added dur	ing restora	tion may and	near .		Le titre d	le l'en-tête p	provient:		
distorsio	on le long de la	marge inté	rieure			Title on I	header take	n from:/		
La reliu	re serrée paut c	auser de l'o	ombre ou de	la	LY	_ Compren	d un (des)	index		
	nding may cau terior margin/	se shadows	or distortion	n			index(es)/			
Tinha bi	ndina				-	· •gmati(	continue			
	ec d'autres do						ous paginati on continue			
Bound	with other mat	crial/			_	7.0				
Planche	es et/ou illustra	tions en co	uleur		L		négale de l'		1	
Coloure	ed plates and/o	r illustratio	ns/		_	Quality	of print var	ies/		
	ie couleur (i.e.	autre que t	pieue ou noi?	re)	L	Transpa	rence			
	ed ink (i.e. oth le couleur (i.e.			-1		Showth				
						and reges us	lacinees			
	géographiques :	en couleur					tached/ itachées			
Colour	ed maps/					_				
Le titre	e de couverture	manque			L	Pages de	colorées, ta	achetées ou	piquées	
	title missing/				_	Pages di	scoloured,	stained or	fored/	
		ou penn	- W108		L	Pages re	staurées et	ou pellicu	lées	
	restored and/o rture restaurée				Γ	Pages re	estored and	or laminat	ted/	
							ayet	•		
	rture endomma	igée					amaged/ ndommagée			
Covers	damaged/				_					
Couve	rture de couleu	ır			L		e couleur			
. /	red covers/				ſ	Colour	ed pages/			
					С	i-dessous.				
checked belo	ow.				d	ans la méth	ode normal	e de filma	ge sont inc	liqués
significantly	change the use	ual method	of filming,	are	r	eproduite, o	que, qui per ou qui peuv	ent exicer	ifier une ir	nage Lientian
of the image	iographically u is in the reprod	nique, while luction, or	on may arter which may	any	e	xemplaire of	jui sont peu	It-être uniq	ues du po	int de vue
copy availab	ole for filming.	Features of	of this copy	which	1	ui a été pos	sible de se p	procurer. L	es détails	de cet
The Institut	e has attempte	d to obtain	the best ori	iginal		'Institut a	microfilmé	la mailleur	avammla:	

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol → (meaning "CQN-TINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrete the method:

L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole → signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

1	2	3
---	---	---

1
2
3

1	2	3
4	5	6

qu'il

de vue

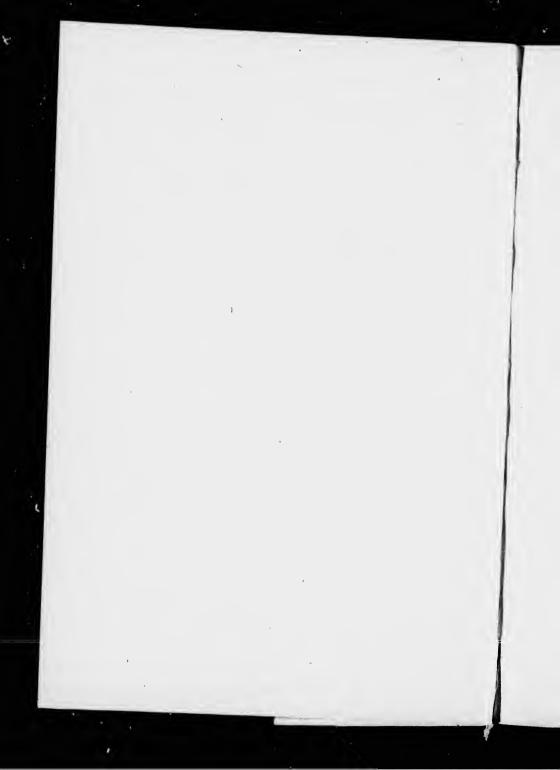
ation

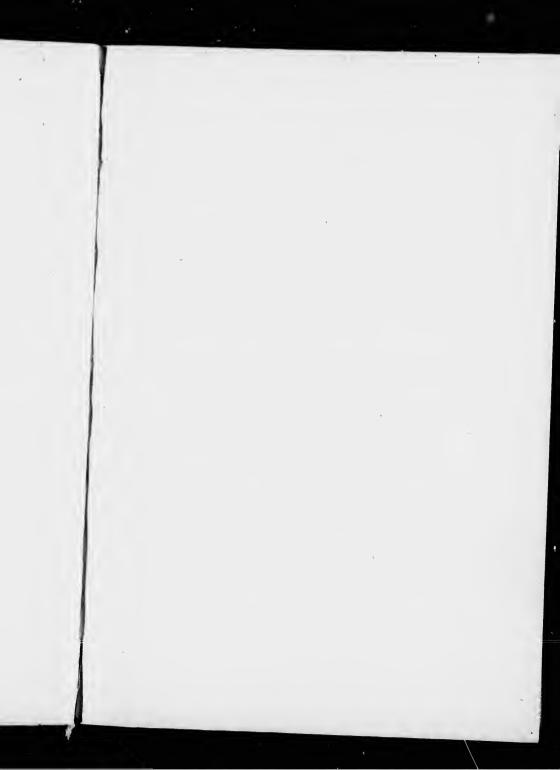
uės

32 X



Jopey Deposited Av. 8402.





### HYDE'S SERIES IN ENGLISH.

### PRACTICAL LESSONS IN THE USE OF ENGLISH.

Book I. For Primary and Intermediate Grades.

**Book II.** For Grammar Grades. Covers such Technical Grammar as is essential to a correct use of English.

BOOK II. WITH SUPPLEMENT. Contains 118 pages more of Technical Grammar than Book II.

The Supplement is also bound separately.

### PRACTICAL LESSONS IN ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

For Upper Grammar Grades, or for other classes requiring a brief, practical, progressive course in English Grammar.

#### DERIVATION OF WORDS.

COMBINED EDITIONS.

Book II. with Practical Grammar.

Book II. with Supplement and Derivation of Words.

#### In Preparation.

A Composition for Upper Grammar and High School Grades.

# PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

FOR GRAMMAR SCHOOLS, UNGRADED SCHOOLS, ACADEMIES, AND THE LOWER GRADES
IN HIGH SCHOOLS

BY

cal

of

ıir-

ish

### MARY F. HYDE

Author of "Practical Lessons in the USE of English"

ADAPTED TO

THE USE OF CANADIAN SCHOOLS

BV

DR. FRED. W. KELLEY

OF THE PROTESTANT HIGH SCHOOL

AND

P. J. LEITCH

OF THE CATHOLIC COMMERCIAL ACADEMY

MONTREAL, QUE.

TORONTO
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.
1896

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and ninety-six, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

that

facts funda

stand

good facts (

All are gi senten explain from s

a clear the Pa but th belong

Th

### PREFACE.

THIS book is designed for the higher grades in grammar schools, and for those classes in high schools, academies, and ungraded schools, that require a brief, practical, progressive course in English grammar.

The aim of the work is not to teach the greatest possible number of facts about the English language, but to give the pupil a mastery of the fundamental grammatical principles as a means toward the right understanding and correct use of English.

The work does not consist of a mere statement of definitions and rules. Every principle is presented through the study of examples of good English, thus leading the pupil from the observation of particular facts to general conclusions, and aiding him to comprehend and appreciate good literature.

Abundant exercises for the application of the principles presented are given throughout the book. The pupil is required to construct sentences illustrating the principles studied, as well as to point out and explain the various forms and constructions found in sentences selected from standard writers.

The selection and arrangement of topics is adapted to give the pupil a clear and comprehensive view of the subject. Part First treats of the Parts of Speech, and emphasizes the fact, that it is not the form but the function of a word that determines the class to which it belongs.

tht hundred the Office of Part Second takes up the Subdivisions of the Parts of Speech, and Inflection. Much practical work is given in connection with these topics. Special training is given upon words and forms commonly misused; choice selections of literature are introduced for study; and many practical exercises in composition are given.

Part Third treats of the grammatical relations of words in sentences. It illustrates the various constructions of the different parts of speech by numerous examples from standard literature.

Part Fourth treats of the structure and analysis of sentences. It gives clear and concise models for oral and written analysis, and contains a great abundance of carefully selected sentences for illustration and practice.

The work is at once simple and comprehensive, being elementary enough for pupils beginning the study of formal grammar, and comprehensive enough for the general student.

M. F. H.

Lesson

П

III.

V.

VI.

VII.

VIII.

IX.

X. XI.

XII.

XIII. XIV.

XV.

XVI.

XVIII.

XIX.

XX.

XXĮ.

eech, and with these commonly udy; and

sentences. speech by

nces. It and conllustration

lementary compre-

F. H.

# CONTENTS.

LESSON	•						
I.							Pagi
II.	•	•	•	•	•	•	1
III.		•	•	•	•	•	2
IV.		•	•	•	•	•	5
v.	Adjectives	•	•	•	•	•	7
VI.	Verbs	•	•	•	•		9
VII.	Adverbs	•	•	•			11
VIII.	Prepositions	•	•	•	•	•	12
IX.	Conjunctions	•	•	•	•	•	14
Х.	Interjections	•	•	•	•	•	16
XI.	Parts of Speech	•	•	,	•	•	17
XII.	Classes of Nouns	•	•	•	•	•	19
XIII.	Number .	•	•	•	•	•	25
XIV.	Number. — Continued	•	•	•	•	•	28
XV.	Number. — Continued	•	•	•	•	•	31
XVI.	Gender .	•	•	•	•	•	33
XVII.	Case .	•	•	•	•	•	34
VIII.	Possessive Forms of Nouns	•	•	•	•	•	38
XIX.	Possessive Forms. — Continued	•	•	•	•		40
XX.	Possessive Forms. — Continued  Possessive Forms. — Continued	•	•	•	•	•	42
XXI.	Parsing Nouns	•	•	•		•	44
4 4 7 - 5 .	tations tability						4.00

### CONTENTS.

Lesson								PAGE
XXII.	Review of Nouns		•		•	•	•	47
XXIII.	The Paragraph .		•	•	•	•	•	49
XXIV.	Composition		•		•			51
XXV.	Personal Pronouns	•	•	•				52
XXVI.	Compound Personal Pro	nou	ıns					55
XXVII.	Adjective Pronouns				•			57
XXVIII.	Relative Pronouns		•		• .			59
XXIX.	Composition		•		•			64
XXX.	Interrogative Pronouns							65
XXXI.	Correct Use of Pronoun	ıs						67
XXXII.	Review of Pronouns							69
XXXIII.	Study of Selection							71
XXXIV.	Composition	•	•					74
XXXV.	Classes of Adjectives		•					75
XXXVI.	Comparison of Adjective	es						78
XXXVII.	Choice of Adjectives							82
XXXVIII.	Review of Adjectives				•			83
XXXIX.	Study of a Description							85
XL.	Composition		e					87
XLI.	Transitive and Intransit	ive	Verbs		٠.			88
XLII.	Active and Passive Voice	ce						91
XLIII.	Mode							93
XLIV.	The Infinitive .		•					95
XLV.	The Participle .		•					97
XLVI.	Tense							101
XLVII.	Person and Number			• ~				104
XLVIII.	Forms of Verbs .							105
XLIX.	Forms of Verbs Con	tinu	ed	•				109
L.	Auxiliary Verbs .							111

L LX LX

L

LXX LXX

LX

	CONTENTS.	vi
Page	Lesson	
47	LI. Auxiliary Verbs. — Continued	Pag II
49	LII. Auxiliary Verbs. — Continued	118
51	LIII. Auxiliary Verbs. — Continued	122
52	LIV. Conjugation of the Verb Drive .	12
55	LV. Lay and Lie	
57	LVI. Sit and Set	130
59	LVII. May and Can	131
64	LVIII. Think; Guess; Expect	133
65	LIX. Stop and Stay	134
67	LX. Models for Parsing Verbs .	135
69	LXI. Review of Verbs	136
71	LXII. Classes of Adverbs	141
74	LXIII. Prepositions	142
75	LXIV. Choice of Prepositions	147
78	LXV. Study of Selection	149
82	LXVI. Classes of Conjunctions	151
83	LXVII. Interjections	154
85	LXVIII. Explanatory Expressions	158
87	LXIX. Intermediate Expressions	159 160
88	LXX. Transposed Expressions	161
91	LXXI. Quotation Marks	
93	LXXII. Indirect Quotations	163
95	LXXIII. Letters Ordering Books	164
97	LXXIV. Miscellaneous Orders .	166
101	LXXV. Miscellaneous Applications .	167
104	LXXVI. Bills	167
105	LXXVII. Bills	168
109	LXXVIII. Receipts	170
III	LXXIX. Advertisements for Articles Lost	170
		172

Lesson					Page
LXXX.	Advertisements for Articles Found				173
LXXXI.	Advertisements for Help , .				173
ĻXXXII.	Advertisements for Situations .				174
LXXXIII.	Notices of Public Meetings .				1 75
LXXXIV.	Telegraphic Despatches				176
LXXXV.	Invitations				177
LXXXVI.	Exercises in Composition				179
LXXXVII.	Constructions of the Noun				181
LXXXVIII.	Constructions of the Pronoun .				185
LXXXIX.	Constructions of the Adjective .	١.			188
XC.	The Verb				190
XCI.	Constructions of Infinitives				193
XCII.	Constructions of Participles .				196
XCIII.	Different Uses of the Same Word				199
XCIV.	Selections for Study				201
XCV.	Structure of the Sentence				205
XCVI.	The Simple Sentence				209
XCVII.	Analysis of Simple Sentences .		•		214
XCVIII.	The Complex Sentence				219
XCIX.	Analysis of Complex Sentences .				223
C.	The Compound Sentence				229
CI.	Selections for Analysis	•			232
CII.	Study of Selection The Gladness	of N	lature		248
CIII.	Study of Selection From Snow-Bo	ound	•		250
CIV.	Rules for Capital Letters and Marks of	Pun	ctuatio	n	254
	List of Abbreviations				260
	Index				263

H

Th tence Sta tence

A stive s
A s
imper

A sexclar

## PART FIRST.

KINDS OF WORDS-THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

~0;0;00

### LESSON I.

### THE SENTENCE.

How many thoughts are expressed in the following sentences?—

- 1. The village master taught his little school.
- 2. Keep thy tongue from evil.

PAGE 173 173

174 175

176 177

179 181

185

188

190 193

196

199

201

205 209

214

219

223 229

232

248

250

254

260

263

on

- 3. Who planted this old apple-tree?
- 4. How are the mighty fallen!

The expression of a complete thought in words is called a sentence.

State the office or use of each sentence above — tell which sentence states or declares something, which expresses a command, etc.

A sentence that states or declares something is called a declarative sentence.

A sentence that expresses a command or an entreaty is called an imperative sentence.

A sentence that asks a question is called an interrogative sentence.

A sentence that expresses sudden or strong feeling is called an exclamatory sentence.

#### EXERCISE I.

State the office of each of the following sentences, and tell the kind of sentence: —

- I. The last ray of sunshine departed.
- 2. Every stranger finds a ready chair.
- 3. How fleet is a glance of the mind!
- 4. The boat was crowded with passengers.
- 5. Dark clouds began to rise in the west.
- 6. The troops were concealed by a thick wood.
- 7. What an admirable piece of work this is!
- 8. Apply thine heart to understanding.
- 9. How many entered the room?
- 10. Consider the lilies of the field.
- II. What was the result?
- 12. I sat beside the glowing grate.

#### EXERCISE II.

- I. Write three declarative sentences.
- 2. Write three imperative sentences.
- 3. Write three interrogative sentences.
- 4. Write three exclamatory sentences.

### LESSON II.

### SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

Tell what is spoken of in each of the following sentences, and what is said about the thing spoken of:—

su

of

Wh wor

prec

B the

N sente

> 1. 2.

> > 3.

and tell the

- 1. Time flies swiftly.
- 2. A rolling stone gathers no moss.
- 3. The breaking waves dashed high.

The part of a sentence that shows what is spoken of is called the subject.

The part of a sentence that tells something about the thing spoken of is called the predicate.

To find the subject and the predicate, answer the questions: (1) What is this sentence about? (2) What is said or asked about it?

The subject and the predicate may each be expressed by a single word, or by several words; as,—

Bells | ring.

A merciful man | considers his beast.

The subject of a declarative sentence is usually placed before the prolicate; as,—

The well-curb had a Chinese roof.

But sometimes, especially in poetry, the subject is placed after the predicate; as,—

Up springs the lark. Sweet is the breath of morn.

#### EXERCISE I.

Name the subject and the predicate in each of the following sentences:—

- 1. The whole island was covered with wood.
- 2. The first spring wild-flowers yield no honey.
- 3. The old oaken bucket hangs in the well.

ood.

s, and what

- 4. Blessed are the pure in heart.
- 5. The first dragon-fly of the season is always a happy discovery.
  - 6. These prairies glow with flowers.
- 7. The copper of Cyprus was in demand in most places of the ancient world.
  - 8. All bloodless lay the untrodden snow.
  - 9. For three nights they floated down the stream.
  - 10. Language is the highest mode of expression.

The subject of an imperative sentence is thou, ye, or you. It is generally not expressed; as,—

Come into the garden.

When the subject is expressed, it is placed after the verb; as,—

Praise ye the Lord.

#### EXERCISE II.

Copy the following sentences, supplying the subjects which are understood and enclosing them in brackets:—

- I. Listen to this account of the fire.
- 2. Fling wide the generous grain.
- 3. Throw part of the cargo overboard.
- 4. Speak gently to the erring.
- 5. Cleanse thou me from secret faults.
- 6. Rejoice in the prosperity of others.
- 7. Be not weary in well-doing.
- 8. Follow the directions carefully.

Example. - Listen [you] to this account of the fire.

ini an

nan

ays a happy

most places

tream. ion.

or you. It is

e verb; as,—

ts which are

EXERCISE III.

State the kind of sentence, and name the subject and the predicate in each of the following sentences:—

- I. When will the matter be settled?
- 2. Here we are at last!
- 3. What peaceful hours I once enjoyed!
- 4. Where does he live?
- 5. Where are a grasshopper's ears?
- 6. How lightly past hardship sits upon us!
- 7. What real service to others did you render yesterday?
- 8. How strange everything looks in this light!
- 9. Do your friends know this?
- 10. How blessings brighten as they take their flight!

### EXERCISE IV.

Write three examples each of a declarative, an imperative, an interrogative, and an exclamatory sentence, and name the subject and the predicate in each sentence.

### LESSON III.

#### NOUNS.

Mention the words in the following sentences that are used as names, and tell what each is the name of:—

**).** 

fire.

- 1. America has furnished to the world the character of Washington.
  - 2. The chair stood by the window.
  - 3. The maples redden in the sun.

Mention a word used as the name of a person; the name of a place; the name of a thing that you can see, feel, hear, smell, or touch; the name of a thing that you can think of but cannot perceive by the senses; the name of a quality of a person or thing; the name of an action.

A word used as a name is called a noun.

#### EXERCISE I.

Mention the nouns in the following sentences, and tell what kind of thing each names:—

- I. He goes on Sunday to the church And sits among his boys.
- 2. Then Evangeline lighted the brazen lamp on the table.

te

ter

the

- 3. A large island covered with palms divides the Nile into two branches.
  - 4. His door was always open to the wayfarer.
  - 5. Hear me with patience.
  - 6. The time of the singing of birds is come.
- 7. He came early in the spring to the settlement of New Plymouth.
  - 8. The breeze comes whispering in our ear,
    That dandelions are blossoming near,
    That maize has sprouted, that streams are flowing,
    That the river is bluer than the sky,

d the character

n; the name of a eel, hear, smell, or of but cannot perperson or thing;

es, and tell what

rch

np on the table. les the Nile into

arer.

ne. ttlement of New

ear,

is are flowing,

That the robin is plastering his house hard by; And if the breeze kept the good news back, For other couriers we should not lack. - LOWELL.

#### EXERCISE II.

- I. Write sentences containing -
  - 1. The name of a person.
  - 2. The name of a place.
  - 3. The name of a public building.
  - 4. The name of a material used in building houses.
  - 5. The name of an article of dress.
  - 6. The name of a part of the human body.
  - 7. The name of a feeling.
  - 8. The name of an action.
- II. Name the subject and the predicate in each of the sentences written.

### LESSON IV.

### PRONOUNS.

For what nouns are the italicized words used in the following sentences? -

- 1. Henry paused, when he reached the door.
- 2. The travellers looked surprised, when they heard the story.

3. I met a little cottage girl, She was eight years old, she said.

A word used for a noun is called a pronoun. By the use of the pronoun, we can designate a person or thing without naming it. The pronoun I designates the speaker without mention of his name; the pronoun it refers without naming it to something that has been previously mentioned, etc.

#### EXERCISE I.

Mention the pronouns in the following sentences, and state for what each is used: -

1. Train up a child in the way he should go.

- 2. Nearly all the night insects are comparatively noiseless in their flight.
  - 3. The books remain where you left them.
- 4. When I turned again to look for the bird, I could not see it.
- 5. Trust men and they will be true to you; treat them greatly and they will show themselves great.
  - Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot O'er the grave where our hero we buried.
  - 7. She folded her arms beneath her cloak.
- 8. As the route of the friends lay in the same direction they agreed to perform the rest of their journey together.

. So intent were the servants upon their sports, that we had to rive repeatedly before we could make ourselves heard. The w

10. A belted kingfisher suddenly appeared in the air just lar pla in front of me, where he hovered for a moment as if doubt ful whether to fly over us and go up the river or to turn said to about and retreat before us.

7 viou

tion

6

Fi

nouns

Th A١

AW

e said.

By the use of the at naming it. The of his name; the that has been pre-

utences, and state

ld go. iparatively noise-

m. ne bird, I could

you; treat them

ll shot

burie<mark>d.</mark> k.

e same direction rncy together.

r sports, that we have ourselves heard. The word in the air just lar plant. nent as if doubt. A word river or to turn said to m

#### EXERCISE IL

Write sentences containing pronouns used for-

- 1. The name of the speaker.
- 2. The name of a person spoken to.
- 3. The name of a person spoken of.
- 4. The names of two or more persons spoken of.
- 5. The names of the speaker and others.
- 6. The name of a thing that has been previously men-
- 7. The names of two or more things that have been previously mentioned.

### LESSON V.

### ADJECTIVES.

Find the words in the following sentences that are used with nouns, to describe or point out the things named:—

- 1. A small boat approached the shore.
- 2. The plant had glossy leaves.
- 3. Two doves circled in the air.
- 4. This package was not opened.

The word *small* describes the particular kind of boat that is meant.

The word *the* limits the application of the noun *plant* to a particular plant.

nent as if doubt. A word that describes or limits the meaning of another word is river or to turn aid to modify that word; as, clear water; the boy.

A word used to modify a noun or a pronoun is called an adjective.

Mention five adjectives that are used with nouns, to express the kind or quality of the objects named; five adjectives that denote quantity or number; three adjectives that point out the thing spoken of.

#### EXERCISE I.

Name the adjectives in the following sentences, and state the use of each: —

- I. Two ships were anchored in the bay.
- 2. Blue were her eyes as the fairy flax.
- 3. A wise son maketh a glad father.
- 4. Brave hearts were ready for bold deeds.
- 5. These people are honest, kind-hearted, and industrious.
- 6. The statue is nearly seven feet in height.
- 7. The wax candles were now lighted, and showed a handsome room, well provided with rich furniture.
- 8. The doe was a beauty, with slender limbs, not too heavy flanks, round body, and aristocratic head, with small ears, and luminous, intelligent, affectionate eyes.—C. D. WARNER.
  - 9. His withered cheek and tresses gray, Seemed to have known a better day.

Example.—The adjectives in the first sentence are two and the. Two shows how many ships were anchored in the bay, and the points out a particular bay.

#### EXERCISE II.

Write five sentences containing adjectives used to show -

- 1. What kind of thing is meant.
- 2. How many things are meant.
- 3. How much of a quantity is mentioned.
- 4. Which thing is spoken of.

son

] tion

N. each

> 1. 2.

3

5. the d

6.

7. the 1

8.

9.

oress the kind note quantity oken of.

nd state the

industrious.

ed a hand-

os, not too with small C. D. WARNER.

wo and the.

Id the points

show --

d.

### LESSON VI.

### VERBS.

Point out the words in the following sentences, that tell or assert something of the thing named:—

- 1. Birds sing.
- 2. The wind blows.
- з. He is a soldier.

A word that asserts is called a verb; as, The sun rose.

The word that denotes the person or thing about which the assertion is made is called the subject\* of the verb; as, The sun rose.

### EXERCISE I.

Mention the verbs in the following sentences, and state what each tells:—

- I. The curfew tolls the knell of parting day.
- 2. He springs from his hammock, he flies to the deck.
- 3. The pigeons fly in great clouds from village to village.
- 4. The kettle sings, the cat in chorus purrs.
- 5. They robbed the wild bees of their honey, and chased the deer over the hills.
  - 6. The horses neighed, and the oxen lowed.
- 7. She pointed to the web of beautifully woven cloth in the loom.
  - 8. A fire blazed brightly on the hearth.
  - 9. The shadows dance upon the wall.

<sup>\*</sup> See foot-note on page 88.

- When breezes are soft and skies are fair,I steal an hour from study and care.
- 11. Thus the night passed. The moon went down; the stars grew pale; the cold day broke; the sun rose.

#### EXERCISE II.

Write sentences containing the following words used (1) as nouns, (2) as verbs:—

bark,	walk,	fear,	sail,	salt,
rock,	look,	dream,	fire,	hope.

#### EXERCISE III.

Write sentences containing the following words used as the subjects of verbs. Underline the verbs:—

moon,	iron,	soldier,	singer,	wind,
courage,	grocer,	river,	organ,	bell.

### LESSON VII.

#### ADVERBS.

Point out the words in the following sentences that show how, when, or where actions were performed:—

- 1. The boat moves slowly.
- 2. He always spoke the truth.
- 3. The child stood here.

its

tive

adv

adje

each

7 8

IO Gra fair,

ent down; the rose.

ds used (1) as

salt, hope.

ds used as the

wind. bell.

show how, when,

Mention the verb in each sentence, and tell what word modifies its meaning.

A word that modifies the meaning of a verb is called an adverb. Sometimes an adverb is used to modify the meaning of an adjective; as, -

- 1. It is a very cold day.
- 2. The sleeve is too short.

Sometimes an adverb is used to modify the meaning of another adverb; as, -

- 1. How gently the rain falls!
- 2. Do not walk so fast.

An adverb is a word that modifies the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

### EXERCISE I.

Mention the adverbs in the following sentences, and tell what each modifies: -

- 1. She passed hastily down the street.
- 2. She turned, and looked back.
- 3. How hard a lesson it is to wait!
- 4. How silently the snow falls!
- 5. The common wild birds of the woods were everywhere.
- 6. Faster and faster we sped.
- 7. The shower soon passed.
- 8. The statement is perfectly correct.
- 9. But we steadfastly gazed on the face that was dead, And we bitterly thought of the morrow. - Wolfe.
- 10. Now fades the glimmering landscape on the sight. -GRAY.

#### EXERCISE II.

- 1. Write five sentences containing adverbs modifying verbs.
- 2. Write three sentences containing adverbs modifying adjectives.
  - 3. Write two sentences containing adverbs modifying adverbs.

1 betu obje

jour

hoof

inter

 $\epsilon$ 

7

8

9

10.

pressi

### LESSON VIII.

### PREPOSITIONS.

Point out the words in the following sentences that show the relation of a noun or pronoun to some other word: -

- 1. They sailed up the river.
- 2. No one spoke to him.
- 3. The clock in the steeple struck three.
- 4. She is fond of music.

A word used with a noun or pronoun to show its relation to some other word in the sentence is called a preposition; as, -

The leaves fell to the ground.

The noun or pronoun before which the preposition is placed is called its object; as, -

The boat is on the shore.

The preposition usually joins a noun or pronoun to a verb, an adjective, or another noun; as,-

nodifying verbs. modifying adjec-

odifying adverbs.

at show the rela-

k three.

its relation to ition; as,—

n is placed is

to a verb, an

I. He lived [verb] by the river.

2. They are ready [adjective] for battle.

3. It is a book [noun] of selections.

#### EXERCISE I.

Mention the prepositions in the following sentences, tell between what words each shows a relation, and name its object:—

- I. A fair little girl sat under a tree.
- 2. The dining-table stood in the centre of the room.
- 3. The boy was pleased at the prospect of taking a long journey.
- 4. At midnight I was aroused by the tramp of horses' hoofs in the yard.
- 5. The habits of our American cuckoo are extremely interesting.
  - 6. Into the street the Piper stept.
  - 7. They were eager for the contest.
  - 8. Every day the starving poor Crowded around Bishop Hatto's door. Southey.
  - 9. Like the leaves of the forest, when summer is green, That host with their banners at sunset were seen.
  - I see the lights of the village
    Gleam through the rain and the mist.

#### EXERCISE II.

1. Write five sentences, each containing a preposition expressing a relation between a verb and a noun or a provoun.

- 2. Write five sentences, each containing a preposition ex pressing a relation between two nouns.
- 3. Write three sentences, each containing a preposition ex pressing a relation between an adjective and a noun.

### LESSON IX.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

Point out the words in the following examples, that connect sentences or similar parts of the same sentence:—

- 1. The walls are high, and the shores are steep.
- 2. They came, but they did not stay.
- 3. Slowly and sadly we laid him down.
- We have been friends together, In sunshine and in shade.

A word that connects sentences or similar parts of the same sentence is called a conjunction.

#### EXERCISE I.

Point out the conjunctions in the following sentences, and tell what each connects:—

- I. The floods came, and the winds blew.
- 2. Freely we serve, because we freely love.
- 3. He reached the well, but nobody was there.
- 4. The ploughman homeward plods his weary way,
  And leaves the world to darkness and to me.—Gray.

,

hear

Bu

и

Wh

, a preposition ex

a preposition ex grate.

5. She must weep, or she will die. - Tennyson.

6. The very flames danced and capered in the polished grate.

- 7. Sink or swim, live or die, survive or perish, I give my heart and my hand to this vote. DANIEL WEBSTER.
  - 8. Three years she grew in sun and shower. WORDSWORTH.
  - 9. The waves beside them danced; but they
    Outdid the sparkling waves in glee. WORDSWORTH.
- 10. Blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

#### EXERCISE II.

Write sentences containing conjunctions connecting —

- I. Two sentences.
- 2. Two nouns.
- 3. Two adjectives.
- 4. Two verbs.
- 5. Two adverbs.

### LESSON X.

### INTERJECTIONS.

What words in the following sentences form no part of either subject or predicate?—

- 1. Alas! we have delayed too long.
- 2. Hark! was that a knock?
- 3. Hurrah! the foes are moving.

s, that connect sen-

es are steep.

v.

wn.

ther,

parts of the same

ig sentences, and

here.

e.

eary way,

to me. - GRAY.

What feeling is expressed by the use of the word alas? By the word hark? By the word hurrah?

A word used to indicate some sudden feeling is called an interjection.

Interjections may express -

- I. Joy; as, hurrah! huzzah!
- 2. Pain or suffering; as, ah! oh! alas!
- 3. Surprise; as, ha! lo! what!
- 4. Disapproval; as, fie! fudge!
- 5. A call for attention; as, ho! hey! hark! Etc., etc.

#### EXERCISE T.

Mention the interjections in the following sentences, and tell what each expresses:—

- I. Alas! I am undone.
- 2. Away! we must not linger.
- 3. Hush! it is the dead of night.
- 4. Halloo! who stands guard here?
- 5. Ah! whence is that flame which now glares on his eye?
  - 6. Oh! how many broken bonds of affection were here!
- 7. But hush! hark! a deep sound strikes like a rising knell.
  - 8. Ha! feel ye not your fingers thrill?
  - 9. Alas! they all are in their graves.
  - 10. Oh! the boat is safe enough.
  - 11. O look! the sun begins to rise.

M sente W

instea

H these

H called

do th

a sen

Ho

Th of sp

form

word alas? By the is called an inter-

12. And lo! from the assembled crowd
There rose a shout, prolonged and loud.

#### EXERCISE II.

Write ten sentences, each containing one of the following interjections:—

hark! whew! ho! hurrah! hush! fy! pshaw! alas! ah! fudge!

### LESSON XI.

### PARTS OF SPEECH.

#### REVIEW EXERCISE.

Mention some of the different parts performed by words in a sentence.

What do we call a word that is used as a name? A word used instead of a noun? A word that asserts?

How many classes of words are used as modifiers? What are these classes called? How does the adjective differ from the adverb?

How many kinds of connecting words are there? What are they called? In what way are prepositions and conjunctions alike? How do they differ?

Mention a class of words not connected with the other words in a sentence.

How many kinds of words have been considered?

The different classes of words used in sentences are called parts of speech. They are so named from the different parts they perform in the sentence.

alas!

y! hark!

sentences, and teli

w glares on his

ction were here! es like a rising

## SUMMARY OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

- 1. A noun is a word used as a name.
- 2. A pronoun is a word used for a noun.
- 3. An adjective is a word used to modify a noun or a pronoun.
  - 4. A verb is a word that asserts.
- 5. An adverb is a word that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.
- 6. A preposition is a word placed before a noun or pronoun, to show its relation to some other word in the sentence.
- 7. A conjunction is a word that connects sentences or similar parts of the same sentence.
- 8. An interjection is a word used to indicate some sudden feeling.

#### EXERCISE I.

Tell whether the italicized words in the following sentences are adverbs or prepositions, giving reasons in each case:—

- I. Is your employer within?
- 2. The work will be done within a week.
- 3. It rolled down the hill.
- 4. Slowly and sadly we laid him down.
- 5. A voice replied far up the height.
- 6. Lift up thine eyes unto the hills.
- 7. They passed by.
- 8. He sat by the well.
- 9. Your hat is behind the door.
- 10. Do not lag behind.

Si

tence.

I

3

5 6

7. 8.

9.

10. 11.

12. 13.

14. ered.

each o

Dis

appea

CH.

.

dify a noun or

verb, an adjec-

ore a noun or er word in the

s sentences or

indicate some

owing sentences ach case:—

en cuse. —

week.

οτυ**π.** nt. 11. A beautiful picture hung above the altar.

12. The eagle soars above.

13. None but the brave deserve the fair.

14. Man wants but little here below.

#### EXERCISE II.

Show which of the words in Italics in the following sentences are prepositions and which are conjunctions:—

1. They came, but they did not remain.

2. He cares for nothing but money.

3. All the family were present, except one son.

4. Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.

5. I have not heard from them since yesterday.

6. Since you are here, you might remain.

7. The children ran after the procession.

8. He came after the exercises had closed.

9. The building will be completed before the leaves fall.

10. It stands before the fireplace.

11. Stay here until I come.

12. They will remain abroad until November.

13. He died for his country.

14. Our bugles sang truce; for the night-cloud had lowered.

#### EXERCISE III.

Distinguish between the offices of the italicized words in each of the following examples:—

1. Then rushed the steed to battle driven. The troops appeared in battle array.

2. Farewell! a long farewell, to all my greatness. Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot.

3. It was over in one second. Omit the second stanza. I second the motion.

4. He is as good as he is strong. Who will show us any good?

5. They visited a far country. Far flashed the red artillery.

6. This is the best answer that was given.

He prayeth best who loveth best All things both great and small.

7. The horse is a *fast* walker. The child is *fast* asleep. When ye *fast*, be not, as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance. The shades of night were falling *fast*.

8. He is still here. Now came still evening on. There is a good fire, still the room is cold.

#### EXERCISE IV.

State the office of each italicized word in the following sen tences, and tell what part of speech it is:—

- I. His to-days are never yesterdays.
- 2. The lion shall lie down with the lamb.
- 3. As I looked up, I saw the boat before me.
- 4. There is a calm for those who weep.
- 5. The laborer is worthy of his hire.
- 6. The good south wind still blew behind.
- 7. It is not finished yet.
- 8. Swiftly, swiftly sailed the ship: Yet she sailed softly too.

9 10

12

13.

the w

16. 17.

•

18. 19.

I.

2.

verbs:

3. adverbs

4.

preposit

.

ness. Not

ond stanza.

how us any

ed artillery.

fast asleep.

on. There

ollowing sen

ıb.

re me.

nd.

- 9. Ere I go, you must consent.
- 10. Think, before you speak.
- 11. Still waters run deep.
- 12. We look before and after.
- 13. The dozon train is late.
- 14. He had experienced many ups and downs in life.
- 15. Up went the steps, bang went the door, round whirled the wheels, and off they rattled.
  - 16. We talked about the trees.
  - 17. On right, on left, above, below, Sprung up at once the lurking foe.
  - 18. The very village was altered.
  - 19. Arise, take up thy bed, and go unto thy house.

#### EXERCISE V.

1. Write sentences containing the following words used as nouns: —

to-morrow, fear, paper, ring, America.

2. Write sentences containing the following words used as verbs:

stand, fear, paper, ring, water.

3. Write sentences containing the following words used as adverbs:—

to-morrow, after, before, since, over.

4. Write sentences containing the following words used as prepositions: —

till, before, after, over, for,

5. Write sentences containing the following words used as conjunctions: -

till, before, after, since, for.

To the Teacher. — Give additional exercises, if they are needed, to impress the fact, that it is not the form of a word, but the part it performs in a sentence, that determines what part of speech the word is.

CLA O

Poin special a class

Lauren hand i father's

2. 7

з. Т

A nam

Prope

words used as

tor.

needed, to impress performs in a sen-

# PART SECOND.

CLASSES AND FORMS OF WORDS - SUBDIVISIONS OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH, AND INFLECTION.

## LESSON XII.

-0020500-

## CLASSES OF NOUNS.

## PROPER AND COMMON NOUNS.

Point out in the following sentences (1) the nouns that name special persons or things, (2) the nouns that apply to every one of a class of persons or things:-

- 1. In the early twilight of Thanksgiving Eve came Laurence, and Clara, and Charley, and little Alice, hand in hand, and stood in a semicircle round Grandfather's chair. - HAWTHORNE.
  - 2. There groups of merry children played.
  - 3. The robin and the wren are flown. BRYANT.

A name that belongs to an individual person or thing is called a proper noun; as, Clarence, New York, Thursday, Lake George.

Proper nouns and words derived from them should begin with capital letters. When a proper noun is made

up of two or more words, each word should generally begin with a capital letter.

A name that applies to every one of a class of persons or thing is called a common noun; as, boy, city, day, lake.

#### EXERCISE I.

## Write sentences containing -

- I. The name of a class of animals.
- 2. The name of a class of flowers.
- 3. The name of a class of buildings.
- 4. The name of a special building.
- 5. The name of a special city.
- 6. The name of a special river.
- 7. The name of an individual soldier.
- 8. The name of an individual poet.
- 9. The name of a special battle.
- 10. The name of a special book.

#### Collective Nouns.

Point out the nouns in the following sentences that name collething, tions of persons or things, and tell of what each collection is collection; posed: -

- 1. The speaker was afraid to face the audience.
- 2. The Assembly adjourned at twelve o'clock.
- The lowing herd winds slowly o'er the lea. GRA onest:
- 4. There is no flock, however watched and tende But one dead lamb is there. - Longfellow.

5. love

A r things

 $W_{r}$ 

Mer quality

A n

verbal Abst

I. F

2. F

3. F

should generally

lake.

5. Are fleets and armies necessary to a work of love and reconciliation? - PATRICK HENRY.

of persons or thing A noun which in the singular names a collection of persons or things is called a collective noun; as, family, jury, swarm.

#### EXERCISE II.

Write sentences containing words used to name a collection

ships, soldiers, sailors, wolves, sheep, bees, thieves, buffaloes, fish, chickens.

#### Abstract Nouns.

Mention each word in the following examples that names the quality or condition of a person or thing; as, -

> The length of a river. The bravery of the soldier. The growth of the plant.

A noun that names a quality, action, or condition of a person or es that name collething, apart from the person or thing itself, is called an abstract ch collection is contoun; as, goodness, happiness.

An abstract noun that names an action is sometimes called a verbal noun; as, walking, singing.

Abstract nouns are formed -

- 1. From adjectives; as, brightness from bright; honesty from er the lea. — GRA onest; patience from patient.
  - 2. From verbs; as, belief from believe; singing from sing.
  - 3. From nouns; as, childhood from child; knavery from knave,

mals. vers.

ldings. ling.

soldier. poet.

le. ζ.

the audience. lve o'clock.

ched and tende - LONGFELLOW.

Mention each noun in the following sentences, and state the class to which it belongs: -

sin

calle

nur

plu N

lar ;

easi

sing

thrus M the

Sc

examp

- 1. The child's illness is of an alarming nature.
- 2. Wisdom is better than strength.
- 3. He has repented of his folly.
- 4. The time of the singing of birds is come.
- 5. His writing was illegible.
- 6. Charity covereth a multitude of sins.
- 7. How poor are they that have not patience!
- 8. How little they knew of the depth, and the strength, and the intenseness of that feeling of resistance to illegal acts of power, which possessed the whole American people!

#### EXERCISE III.

Write the following words in a column, and opposite each place the corresponding abstract noun.

industrious, temperate, sweet, proud, long,	weak, walk, judge, conceal, please,	bright, courageous, beautiful, deceive, learn,	warm, true, just, high, hard,	honest, wise, innocent, dull, pure.
---	-------------------------------------	--	---	---

## LESSON XIII.

#### NUMBER.

1. Tell how many forms each noun in the following examples has, and whether each form denotes one or more: -

s, and state the

ure.

e!

the strength, ace to illegal rican people!

opposite each

honest, wise, innocent, dull, pure.

ng examples

book, watch, fox, lasso, potato, books, watches, foxes, lassos, potatoes.

The form of a word used in speaking of one thing is called singular; the form used in speaking of more than one thing is called plural.

When a noun denotes one thing, it is said to be in the singular number.

When a noun denotes more than one thing it is said to be in the plural number.

Most nouns form the plural by adding s to the singular; as, bird, birds; river, rivers.

When the singular ends in a sound that does not unite easily with the sound of s, some nouns add es to the singular, to form the plural; as, loss, losses; match, matches; thrush, thrushes; tax, taxes.

Most nouns ending in o add s to the singular, to form the plural; as,—

piano, solo, folio, cameo, canto, portfolio, octavo, quarto, tyro, halo.

Some nouns ending in o take es in the plural; as,—

hero, negro, cargo, torpedo, echo, tomato, tornado, potato, mulatto, veto.

2. Mention the ending of the singular nouns in the following examples, and tell how their plurals are formed:—

city, story, day, chimney, chimney, chimneys.

Nouns ending in y preceded by a vowel, add s to the singular, to form the plural; as, boy, boys; chimney, chimneys.

Nouns ending in y preceded by a consonant, change y to *ies*, to form the plural; as, city, cities; lily, lilies.

3. How are the singular nouns in the following examples changed to make each mean more than one?—

proof, gulf, fife, proofs, gulfs fifes.

Most nouns ending in f or fe form the plural by adding s to the singular; as, roof, roofs; safe, safes.

The following nouns change f or fe to ves, to form the plural:

leaf,	shelf,	wolf,	loaf,	knife,
half,	beef,	thief,	calf,	life.
wife,	sheaf,	elf,	self,	wharf (or add s).

## EXERCISE I.

Write the following words in columns, and opposite each word write its plural form:

path, safe, roof, muff, wreath,	gift, truth, cliff, solo, alley,	fable, sign, hero, potato, moth,	tree, fife, tornado, torpedo, chief,	gulf, valley, chimney, piano, handkerchief.
---------------------------------	--	----------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---

## EXERCISE II.

Write sentences containing the plurals of the following nouns;—

Mo their

nouns

ı.

Son of the

In *childre* 

ples, a

el, add s to the himney, chimneys. change y lilies.

examples changed

iral by adding

s, to form the

knife, life. wharf (or add s).

opposite each

tulf, alley, himney, iano, andkerchief.

e following

body,	kidney,	berry,	jury,	alley,
gallery,	essay,	ferry,	journey,	pulley,
copy, daisy,	dairy, fly,	lily,	donkey, pony,	puney, poppy, duty.

#### EXERCISE III.

Make a list of ten nouns, ending in f or fe, that form their plurals by the addition of s, and a list of ten other nouns that form their plurals in ves.

## LESSON XIV.

#### NUMBER. - Continued.

1. Mention the plurals below, and tell how they are formed: -

man, foot, mouse, ox, child, men, feet, mice, oxen, children.

Some nouns form the plural by changing the vowel of the singular; as, man, men; goose, geese; tooth, teeth; foot, feet; mouse, mice (also changes s to c).

In a few nouns the plural ends in en; as, ox, oxen: child, children; brother, brethren.

- 2. Give the number of each italicized noun in the following examples, and note its form:—
  - 1. A deer came to the shore of the lake.
  - 2. Deer have their established runways.

- 3. A sheep before her shearers is dumb.
- 4. All we like sheep have gone astray.

Some nouns have the same form in both numbers; as, sheep, deer, trout, cannon.

Some nouns have no singular; as, ashes, scissors, tongs, trousers.

Some nouns have two plural forms differing in meaning; as,—

brother, brothers (by blood), brethren (by association). fish, fishes (taken separately), fish (taken collectively). genius, geniuses (men of genius), genii (spirits). index, indexes (of books), indices (signs in algebra). pea, peas (taken separately), pease (taken collectively). penny, pennies (taken separately), pence (taken collectively).

#### EXERCISE I.

Write sentences containing the plurals of the following nouns, and tell how each plural is formed:—

woman.	c .	<i>J</i> -		
tooth, sheaf,	foot, ox, enemy, colloquy,	cannon, mouse, buoy, envoy,	shad, fish, crutch, life,	deer, genius, reef, fife.

## EXERCISE II.

Make a list of the following nouns, and opposite each write its singular:—

genii, beeves, lives,	peas, brothers, indexes,	pence, fishes, women,	brethren, pease, sheaves,	indices, pennies,
			Suicales!	halves,

So word few

mothe

I.

Wr the pl

> £ t

2. V

or the The

Let

the +'s

is dumb. astray.

oth numbers; as,

hes, scissors, tongs,

fering in mean-

ssociation). collectively). rits). algebra). ollectively). en collectively).

the following

deer, genius, reef. fife.

ite each write

indices, pennies, halves,

### LESSON XV.

### NUMBER. - Continued.

1. Tell how each plural form below is made from the singular:

spoonful. spoonfuls, brother-in-law. brothers-in-law,

man-servant, men-servants.

merchantmen,

Some compound nouns form the plural like single words, others make the principal word plural, and a few change both words; as, cupful, cupfuls; mother-in-law, mothers-in-law; woman-servant, women-servants.

#### EXERCISE I.

Write the singulars of the following nouns, and tell how the plurals are formed: -

grandfathers, eyelashes, tooth-brushes, fathers-in-law,

sisters-in-law.

maid-servants, attorneys-at-law,

men-of-war,

countrymen,

greenhouses, forget-me-nots, commanders-in-chief, women-servants, knights-templars.

2. When a title is prefixed to a proper name, the compound may be made plural by changing either the title or the name; as, the Misses Brown or the Miss Browns.

The title is made plural when it is used with two or more names; as, Messrs. Stone and Wood.

Letters, figures, and signs add the apostrophe (') and s, to form the plural; as, Dot the i's; Cancel the 5's; Write the +'s on a straight line,

Many nouns taken from foreign languages retain their original plurals. The following are a few of the most common:

beau,	errata, straţa, indices, analyses, crises, beaux,	bandit,	vertices, axes, bases, phenomena, banditti,
cherub,	cherubim,		seraphim.

Some foreign words which are in common use form the plural in the usual way, often with a difference of meaning; as, formulas, indexes, geniuses.

#### EXERCISE II.

Make a list of the foregoing singular nouns from foreign languages, and opposite each write from memory its plural.

## LESSON XVI.

#### GENDER.

Which words in the following list denote males? Which denote females?—

man,	father,	host,	man-servant.
woman, mother,	hostess,	maid-servant	
		•	The work of the state of

A gend

A gend A

A be of Th

of the

ī.

ba bo br

> bu codra

ea fat ga

ge ha ho

2. but of

> MAS ba

> > CO

ges retain their most common:

PLURAL.
larvæ,
radii,
genii,
m, memoranda,
vertices,
axes,
bases,
l, phenomena,

seraphim.

orm the plural in g; as, formulas,

banditti,

s from foreign y its plural.

Which denote

nan-servant, naid-servant. A noun that denotes a male is said to be of the masculine gender; as, man, heir.

A noun that acnotes a female is said to be of the feminine gender; as, woman, heiress.

A noun that may denote either a male or a female is said to be of the common gender; as, parent, friend, robin.

A noun that denotes a thing neither male nor female is said to be of the neuter gender; as, book, sky, joy.

The gender o. nouns is distinguished in three ways: -

## 1. By different words; as, -

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
bachelor,	maid,	husband,	wife,
boy,	girl,	king,	queen,
brother,	sister,	monk,	nun,
buck,	doe,	lord,	lady,
cock,	hen,	nephew,	niece,
drake,	duck,	papa,	mamma,
earl,	countess,	ram,	ewe,
father,	mother,	sir,	madam,
gander,	goose,	son,	daughter,
gentleman,	lady,	stag,	hind,
hart,	roe,	uncle,	aunt,
horse,	mare,	wizard,	witch.

2. By different endings. The chief feminine ending is ess, but other endings appear in some words; as,—

M	SCULINE.	FEMININE.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
t	aron,	baroness,	benefactor,	benefactress,
C	ount,	countess,	emperor,	empress,

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
heir,	heiress,	duke,	duchess,
host,	hostess,	master,	mistress,
Jew,	Jewess,	tiger,	tigress,
lion,	lioness,	administrator,	administratrix,
patron,	patroness,	executor,	executrix,
prince,	princess,	hero,	heroine,
abbot,	abbess,	Paul,	Pauline,
governor,	governess,	czar,	czarina,
negro,	negress,	Augustus,	Augusta,
actor,	actress,	sultan,	sultana.

## 3. By prefixing words indicating the sex; as, -

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
man-servant,	maid-servant,
men-singers,	women-singers
he-goat,	she-goat.

#### EXERCISE I.

Make a list of all the masculine nouns mentioned in this lesson, and opposite each write from memory the corresponding feminine noun.

#### EXERCISE II.

Point out the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter nouns in the jollowing sentences, and tell which nouns may denote either males or females:—

1. We learned the ways of the fish, the birds, the bees, the winds, the clouds, the flowers.

2.

3. part o

man.

heart like a

6.

CHARLES 7.

8. most s

most a

9.

10.

II.ByronI2.

reminine.
fuchess,
nistress,
igress,
dministratrix,
executrix,
aeroine.

Pauline, zarina, Augusta, ultana.

oned in this e correspond-

neuter nouns may denote

ds, the bees,

- 2. Night closed in, but still no guest arrived.
- 3. Leaving the boatmen at the camp, I spent the greater part of the night in the very heart of a jungle.
- 4. Temperance and labor are the two best physicians of man.
- 5. Though Grandfather was old and gray-haired, yet his heart leaped with joy whenever little Alice came fluttering, like a butterfly, into the room. HAWTHORNE.
- 6. I have had playmates, I have had companions. Charles Lamb.
  - 7. Brethren, the sower's task is done. BRYANT.
- 8. I rise, my Lords, to declare my sentiments on this most solemn and serious subject. BURK
  - 9. Little Effie shall go with me to-morrow to the green, And you'll be there, too, mother, to see me made the Queen.—Tennyson.
  - IO. Brothers, sisters, husbands, wives,
    Followed the Piper for their lives.—ROBERT BROWNING.
- 11. The lamps shone o'er fair women and brave men.

   Byron.
  - The hero's heart, to be unmoved,

    The poet's star-tuned harp, to sweep,

    The patriot's voice, to teach and rouse,

    The monarch's crown, to light the brows?

    He giveth His beloved sleep.—E. B. Browning.

## LESSON XVII.

#### CASE.

Mention the subjects of the verbs in the following sentences:

- 1. The boy bought a watch.
- 2. An officer caught the thief.
- 3. Birds build nests.

What did the boy buy? Whom did the officer catch? What do birds build? Which words limit the actions expressed by the verbs? The noun or pronoun that limits the action expressed by a verb is called the object of the verb.

State the offices of the italicized words in the following: -

- 1. We followed the shepherd's dog.
- 2. The horse's bridle is broken.

When a word is used to show to whom or to what something belongs, it is said to denote possession.

Find in the following sentences a noun used (1) as the subject of a verb, (2) as the object of a verb, (3) as the object of a preposition, (4) to denote possession:—

- 1. The boy stood by the door.
- 2. He heard his father's voice.
- 3. A wave upset the boat.
- 4. The traveller walked through the fields.

The relation which a noun or pronoun bears to some other word in the sentence is called case.

A nati

case

A to be

to sor

The

Th

meanii ber an and ca

Stat

nouns

I. 7 2. 7

3. C

4. T

A noun used as the subject of a verb is said to be in the nominative case; as, -

The bell rang.

A noun used to show possession is said to be in the possessive case; as, -

The child's eyes are blue.

A noun used as the object of a verb or of a preposition is said to be in the objective case; as, -

- I. They launched the vessel.
- 2. He gazed at the flowers.

The case of a noun is determined by the relation that it bears to some other word in the sentence. The possessive case of nouns is the only one that has a special form. The common or ordinary form of the noun is used in the other cases.

The alteration in the form of a word to express a change of meaning is called inflection. Nouns are inflected to indicate number and case. A noun is said to be declined when its number and case forms are regularly arranged; as, -

NOM.	AND OBJ.	CASE.	Possi
r.	boy,		rossi

ESSIVE CASE. Singular boy's, Plural. boys, boys'.

### EXERCISE I.

State the kind, the gender, the number, and the case of the nouns in the following sentences: -

- 1. This tree stood in the centre of an ancient wood.
- 2. The waves rush in on every side.
- 3. Grandfather's chair stood by the fireside.
- 4. The stranger shook his head mournfully.

ving sentences:

catch? What do ssed by the verbs? epressed by a verb

ollowing:—

g.

what something

1) as the subject object of a prepo-

he fields.

some other word

5. Birds have wonderfully keen eyes.

6. He shook his head, shouldered the rusty firelock, and and with a heart full of trouble and anxiety turned his steps woul homeward.

- 7. Dark lightning flashed from Roderick's eye. Scort.
- 8. When the rock was hid by the surge's swell, The mariners heard the warning bell. - SOUTHEY.
- 9. The rude forefathers of the hamlet sleep. Gray.
- 10. They shook the depths of the desert gloom. HEMANS.

#### EXERCISE II.

- 1. Write five sentences containing nouns in the nominative case.
- 2. Write five sentences containing nouns in the possessive case.
- 3. Write five sentences containing nouns in the objective case.

## LESSON XVIII.

## POSSESSIVE FORMS OF NOUNS.

Mention the nouns that are in the possessive case, and tell how the possessive is formed in each example: -

- 1. She knelt by the lady's side.
- 2. The ladies' gallery is closed.
- 3. Men's voices were heard.

Add the apostrophe and s ('s) to a singular noun, to housa form the possessive; as, boy, boy's; man, man's.

7 sake

form Α

Α

endi childe

Th

to she rays;

and 1 I.

Po

2.

3. Christ

4. the ba

> 5. 6.

7. 8.

9. ]

Touch.

ck's eye. — Scott. e's swell,

l. - SOUTHEY. sleep. - Gray.

gloom. - HEMANS.

s in the nomina-

is in the posses-

in the objective

case, and tell how

IS.

ide. ed.

The s is sometimes omitted in poetry for the sake of the metre; rusty firelock, and and it is also omitted in a few words where too many hissing sounds turned his steps would come together; as, for conscience' sake; for righteousness' sake; for Jesus' sake.

> Add the apostrophe (') to a plural noun ending in s, to form the possessive; as, boys, boys'; ladies, ladies'.

> Add the apostrophe and s ('s) to a plural noun not ending in s, to form the possessive; as, men, men's; children, children's.

> The possessive sign does not always denote possession. It is used o show authorship, origin, kind, etc.; as, Lowell's poems; the sun's rays; men's clothing.

#### EXERCISE I.

Point out the nouns in these sentences, tell how each is used, and name its case: -

- 1. The lark's song rang in her ears.
- 2. The sound of horses' hoofs was heard in the distance.
- 3. The scene brought to mind an old writer's account of Christmas preparations.
- 4. The incidents of the Revolution plentifully supplied the barber's customers with topics of conversation.
  - 5. The boy rang the janitor's bell.
  - 6. A burst of laughter came from the servants' hall.
  - 7. I noted but two warblers' nests during the season.
  - 8. Vainly the fowler's eye 'Might mark thy distant flight to do thee wrong.
- 9. He felt that his little daughter's love was worth a ngular noun, to housand times more than he had gained by the Golden Touch, - HAWTHORNE,

#### EXERCISE II.

Write in one column the possessive singular forms, and in another column the possessive plural forms of the following words:—

sister,	woman,	boy,	girl,
mother,	wife,	soldier,	son,
bee,	bird,	friend,	teacher,
poet,	child,	man,	judge.

fron

forth

stain

Chai

throi

ing

carpe HAWT

8

9.

10.

I.

joint

separa

Example.—SINGULAR. PLURAL. sister's, sisters', woman's, women's.

#### LESSON XIX.

#### POSSESSIVE FORMS. - Continued.

Tell how the possessive case is formed in the following compound words and phrases:—

- 1. The lieutenant-governor's reverie had now come to an end.
  - 2. Bright and Dun's window is filled with flowers.
  - 3. They are reading Graham and Wood's History.

When a name is composed of two or more words, add the possessive sign to the last word only; as, Marsh and Wood's store; Lee and Peabody's office.

Two connected nouns implying separate possessions must each take the possessive sign; as, Webster's and Worces ter's dictionaries.

## EXERCISE I.

Explain the possessives in the following examples: -

- 1. In my father's house are many mansions.
- 2. Hope vanished from Fitz-James's eye. -- Scott.
- 3. This happened after General Washington's departure from Cambridge.
- 4. Many a young man ransacked the garret, and brought forth his great-grandfather's sword, corroded with rust and stained with the blood of King Philip's War. - HAWTHORNE.
- 5. The rest of the house was in the French taste of Charles the Second's time. - IRVING.
- 6. The grocers', butchers', and fruiterers' shops were thronged with customers. - IRVING.
- 7. Hither they came, from the cornfields, from the clearing in the forest, from the blacksmith's forge, from the carpenter's workshop, and from the shoemaker's seat. -HAWTHORNE.
  - 8. Let all the ends thou aim'st at be thy country's, Thy God's, and truth's. - SHAKESPEARE.
- 9. What good woman does not laugh at her husband's or father's jokes and stories time after time?-Thackeray.
  - 10. These are Clan-Alpine's warriors true. Scott.

#### EXERCISE II.

- 1. Write five sentences containing connected nouns denoting joint possession.
- 2. Write five sentences containing connected nouns denoting separate possession.

r forms, and in

of the following

girl,

son,

teacher,

iudge.

lowing compound

ad now come

with flowers. od's History.

re words, add as, Marsh and

e possessions

ter's and Worces.

## LESSON XX.

deb

I

S

bbje

To

Ι.

2.

3.

ther

Pa

## POSSESSIVE FORMS. - Continued.

Possession is sometimes indicated by the objective case with the preposition of; as, The voice of the speaker, for the speaker's voice.

This form is generally used in speaking of things without life; as, The lid of the box; the bank of the river.

This form is preferred also in speaking of persons, when the possessive form would be ambiguous or awk vard; as, The wife of one of my brothers.

When a thing is personified, the possessive sign is generally used, particularly by the poets; as,—

And read their history in a nation's eyes.—Gray. In reason's ear they all rejoice.—Addison.

Certain words and phrases denoting a period of time take the possessive case also; as, A day's journey; a week's vacation; six months' interest.

#### EXERCISE I.

Explain fully the case of each noun in the following sentences, and point out the examples in which possession is indicated by the objective case with the preposition of:—

- I flew to the pleasant fields traversed so oft
   In life's morning march, when my bosom was young.
- 2. He has not learned the lesson of life who does not every day surmount a fear.—Emerson.
- 3. The trade of America had increased far beyond the speculations of the most sanguine imaginations.—Burke.

nued.

ojective case with the r the *speaker's* voice.

ersons, when the posas, The wife of one

gn is generally used,

eyes. — Gray.

od of time take the week's vacation; six

the following senpossession is indion of:—

so oft

osom was young. — Campbell.

ife who does not

l far beyond the

4. The poetry of earth is never dead. - Keats.

5. Either measure would have cost no more than a day's debate. — Burke.

- 6. They came without a moment's delay.
- 7. She has had two years' experience.
- 8. He likes neither winter's snow nor summer's heat.
- 9. The city was taken after a ten years' siege.
- 10. The chieftain's pride was humbled.

#### EXERCISE II.

Select from standard writers -

- I. Ten sentences in which possession is indicated by the objective case with the preposition of.
- 2. Ten other sentences in which possession is indicated by the use of the possessive sign.

## LESSON XXI.

## PARSING NOUNS.

To parse a word, tell -

- I. Its classification name the part of speech.
- 2. Its form—give the inflection, if any.
- 3. Its construction—show its grammatical relation to ther words in the sentence.

Parse each noun in the following exercises. Tell -

- I. The kind of noun.
- 2. Its number.

- 3. Its gender.
- 4. Its case.
- 5. Its construction.

**Example.** — His eyes sparkled with joy when he heard Janon's reply.

- 1. Eyes is a common noun, plural number, neuter gender, nominative case, subject of the verb sparkled.\*
- 2. Joy is an abstract noun, singular number, nouter gender, objective case, object of the preposition with.
- 3. Jason's is a proper noun, singular number, masculine gender, possessive case, depending upon the noun reply.
- 4. Reply is a common noun, singular number, neuter gender, objective case, object of the verb heard.

#### EXERCISE I.

- 1. The lights of the church shone through the door.
- 2. Nell and her grandfather rose from the ground, and took the track through the wood. DICKENS.
  - 3. The rude forefathers of the hamlet sleep. Grav.
  - 4. I bring fresh showers for the thirsting flowers. Shelley.
  - 5. Strong reasons make strong actions. Shakespeare.
  - 6. I stood in Venice, on the Bridge of Sighs. Byron.
  - 7. I now bade a reluctant farewell to the old hall.—IRVING.
- 8. A great deal of talent is lost in the world for the want of a little courage. —Sidney Smith.

I. 2.

3. and t

Sleep a den and p

5.

7. and in

б.

8. 9.

man, 10. all thi

Wha

<sup>\*</sup> A briefer method of parsing may be followed as soon as the pupil is familiar with the different steps; thus, Eyes is a noun, common, plural, neuter, nominative, and subject of the verb sparkled.

#### EXERCISE II.

- I. The eyes of the sleepers waxed deadly and chill. Byron.
- 2. Is Saul also among the prophets? BIBLE.
- 3. The doe lifted her head a little with a quick motion, and turned her ear to the south. -C. D. WARNER.
- 4. They had now reached the road which turns off to Sleepy Hollow; but Gunpowder, who seemed possessed with a demon, instead of keeping up it, made an opposite turn, and plunged headlong down hill to the left.—IRVING.
  - 5. 'Tis the middle of night by the castle clock, And the owls have awakened the crowing cock.

- COLERIDGE.

6. A soft answer turneth away wrath. — BIBLE.

- 7. Some have even learned to do without happiness, and instead thereof have found blessedness.—Carlyle.
  - 8. The lowing herd winds slowly o'er the lea. Gray.
- 9. Reading maketh a full man, conversation a ready man, and writing an exact man. BACON.
- 10. Charity beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things. BIBLE.

### LESSON XXII.

### REVIEW OF NOUNS.

What is a noun? Mention the two leading classes of nouns and state the difference between these classes. What is a collective

Jawon's

er, nomi-

er, objec-

gender,

gender,

loor. and, and

ay. — Shelley.

ARE.

Byron. — Irving.

for the

pupil is faral, neuter, noun? What is an abstract noun? State three ways in which abstract nouns are formed, and illustrate by examples.

What is meant by inflection? To what do the inflections of nouns relate?

How do most nouns form the plural? Mention other ways in which nouns form their plurals, and illustrate by example.

Give the plural of watch, piano, potato, donkey, lily, loaf, roof, tooth, ox, sheep.

Distinguish between the meaning of brothers and brethren; fishes and fish; indexes and indices; pennies and pence.

State three ways in which compound nouns form the plural, and illustrate by examples.

Give the plural of larva, alumnus, axis, beau, bandit, seraph. Why do these nouns not form their plurals in the usual way?

What is gender? How many genders are there, and what does each denote? Mention three ways in which the gender of nouns is distinguished.

Give the feminine nouns corresponding to the nouns hart, monk, nephew, host, master, governor, executor, hero, man-servant.

Tell the gender of the nouns woman, heiress, landlord, doe, waitress, czar, administratrix, guest, friend, witness, cousin, sun, wind, table, house.

How many cases have nouns? What determines the case of a noun? Which case has a special form? How is the possessive case of nouns formed? How is the possessive formed in compound words and phrases? How may possession be indicated without the possessive form? When is this way preferable?

Point out the nouns in these sentences, tell how each is used, and name its case:—

- 1. He was shown into the king's presence.
- 2. He wrapped her warm in his seaman's coat.

3. 4.

4· 5·

6.

shaken 7.

8.

9.

wheels

10.

Let to First are the

front o an angr little so enforce

There bee-brea and hor are pass

have no

s in which

her ways in

v, loaf, roof,

thren; fishes

- 4. The children clustered round Grandfather's chair.
- 5. Where did the officer stand?

3. Cultivate the habit of attention.

- 6. The people's confidence in their commander was unshaken.
  - 7. We visited Washington's headquarters.
  - 8. A fisherman hastened along the beach.
- 9. She heard the tramp of horses' hoofs and the rattling of wheels.
  - 10. The village master taught his little school.

### LESSON XXIII.

### THE PARAGRAPH.

#### THE BUSY BEE.

Let us watch the bees as they pass to and fro from their hive. First of all we see some half-dozen around the door. They are there to warn off intruders. If we approach too near the front of the hive, one of these sentries will dash forward with an angry buzz; and, if we do not wisely take the hint, the brave little soldier will soon return with help from the guard-room to enforce the command.

There are three substances required in the hive, — pollen, or bee-bread, the food of the young bees; wax to make the combs; and honey for the support of the community. The bees that are passing and repassing the sentries are not all laden alike. Some of them have little yellow or red tufts on their legs, others have none. But all that return are laden. Those with tufts on

e plural, and ndit, seraph.

way? d what does ler of nouns

hart, monk, ant.

rd, doe, wait-, sun, wind,

ne case of a ossessive case apound words at the posses-

is used, and

their legs have been collecting pollen from flowers. The honey-gatherers and the wax-gatherers carry their stores in their throats.

To understand how the pollen is carried, we should examine a bee's hind leg with a microscope. The upper joint is flattened, and its edges are surrounded with stiff hairs, which form a sort of basket. When the bee enters a flower, it takes a plunge into the pollen. The pollen is brushed down into the little basket, till a good-sized ball is formed. If the bee cannot complete its load in one flower, it will always seek out another of the same kind. It will not mix the pollen of two different kinds of flowers.

The honey-gatherers and the wax-gatherers draw in the sweet juices from flowers by their trunks. The trunk serves as a mouth and a pump. The liquid passes through this into the throat, and is thus carried to the hive.

Adapted from Good Words for the Young.

What do we first see around the door of the hive? What do these bees do? Why are they called sentries? What is an intruder?

What three substances are required in the hive? What is pollen? What is meant by the community? What are the bees that are passing and repassing the sentries doing?

Describe a bee's hind leg. How does a bee collect pollen?

How do the honey-gatherers and the wax-gatherers collect their stores?

Into how many parts is this selection divided?

The different parts into which a prose composition is divided are called paragraphs.

State the number of paragraphs in this piece, and tell what each is about.

Wri. Tell —

ı. V

2. V

3. H

their st

above.

Leav. Leav.

line in e

Write home; a

coa

State,

cot

cess of cu

s. The honeystores in their

chould examine it joint is flatirs, which form wer, it takes a down into the che cannot k out another two different

w in the sweet k serves as a this into the

rds for the Young.

What do these truder?
What is pollen?
hat are passing

ollen? s collect their

is divided are

what each is

### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Write from memory what you have learned about the Bees. Tell —

- 1. What bees are first seen around a hive.
- 2. What three substances are required in the hive, and the use of each.
  - 3. How a bee collects pollen and carries it to the hive.
- 4. How the honey-gatherers and the wax-gatherers collect their stores.

Write in paragraphs, making one paragraph for each heading above.

Leave a margin half an inch wide at the left of your paper.

Leave a space half an inch long at the beginning of the first line in every paragraph.

## LESSON XXIV.

#### COMPOSITION.

Write about some article that is prepared for market near your home; as,—

coal, tobacco, wheat, granite, cotton, petroleum, butter, maple sugar.

State, so far as you know, the different steps taken in the process of cultivation or manufacture, and tell in what form and in what way the article is taken to market.

## LESSON XXV.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

No Po.

Ob

The

The

I.

or mor

SHAKESE

Non

Pos. Obj.

The

a noun

now c

Mention the pronouns in the following sentences, and tell which denote the person speaking, which the person spoken to, and which the person or thing spoken of: -

- I met a little cottage girl; 1. She was eight years old, she said.
- 2. You will be surprised when you read the report.
- 3. He requested that we should be present.
- 4. Buy the truth, and sell it not.

A pronoun that shows by its form whether the person speaking is meant, the person spoken to, or the person or thing spoken of, is called a personal pronoun.

A pronoun that denotes the person speaking is said to be in the first person; as, I, we.

A pronoun that denotes a person spoken to is said to be in the second person; as, thou, ye, you.

A pronoun that denotes a person or a thing spoken of is said to be in the third person; as, he, she, it, they.

# DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

		4.	11
FIRST	PERSON.		

SINGULAR. Nom. PLURAL. I, Nom. Poss. we. mine, or my,

Poss. ours, or our, Obj. me.

Obj. us.

#### SECOND PERSON.

Nom. thou, Nom. ye, or you,
Poss. thine, or thy, Poss. yours, or your,
Obj. thee. Obj. you.

The second person singular is no longer in common use. It is now chiefly used in prayer and in poetry; as,—

- 1. Withhold not thou thy tender mercies from me.
- 2. I see in thy gentle eyes a tear; They turn to me in sorrowful thought; Thou thinkest of friends, the good and dear, Who were for a time, and now are not.—BRYANT.

The plural pronoun you is used, in ordinary speech, whether one or more than one person is addressed; as,—

- I. You are merry, my lord. SHAKESPEARE.
- 2. You are not wood, you are not stones, but men. -

#### THIRD PERSON.

	Singular.			Plural.	
Nom. Poss. Obj.		she, hers, or her,	Neut. it, its, it.	Masc., Fem., or Neut. they, theirs, or their, them.	

The pronoun of the masculine gender is generally used to refer to a noun which may denote a person of either sex; as,—

Each pupil must provide his own material

s, and tell which spoken to, and

aid. d the report.

sent.

person speaking g spoken of, is

d to be in the

to be in the of is said to

IS.

γ our,

The pronoun of the masculine gender is also used in referring to animals or things that are supposed to possess masculine qualities, and the pronoun of the feminine gender is used in referring to animals or things to which feminine qualities are attributed; as,—

- I. The eagle soars above his nest.
- 2. Earth, with her thousand voices, praises God. Coleridge

The pronoun of the neuter gender is often used to refer to animals or to young children, in cases where the sex is not considered; as,—

The deer raised its head. The infant knew its name.

The possessive forms my, thy, her, our, your, and their are used with nouns, and the forms mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, and theirs are used when no noun follows the possessive; as,—

This is my book.
The book is mine.

Mine and thine are sometimes used for my and thy, before words beginning with a vowel sound; as,—

9.

10. 11.

Tell and ho

Bow down thine ear.

I will lift up mine eyes unto the hills.

## WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Copy the following sentences, and underline the pronouns and the nouns to which they refer. Explain the use of each pronoun: —

- 1. Every person should strive to do his best.
- 2. The lion springs upon his prey.
- 3. The moon is at her full.

used in referring to masculine qualities, ed in referring to attributed; as,—

God. - COLERIDGE

l to refer to anis not considered

d their are used yours, and theirs

hy, before words

pronouns and h pronoun:—

4 How glorious, through his depths of light, Rolls the majestic sun!

- 5. The deer left her delicate foot-print in the soft mould.
- 6. The bear broke away from his keeper.
- 7. The sea is mighty, but a mightier sways His restless billows.
- 8. The merry lark, he soars on high,
  No worldly thought o'ertakes him;
  He sings aloud to the clear blue sky,
  And the daylight that awakes him.
  As sweet a lay, as loud, as gay,
  The nightingale is trilling;
  With feeling bliss, no less than his

With feeling bliss, no less than his, Her little heart is thrilling.

- 9. The child closed its eyes.
- 10. The camel kneels to receive its burden.
- 11. The year is going, let him go.

## LESSON XXVI.

## COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Tell how the italicized pronouns in the following sentences are formed, and how each is used:—

- 1. The boy hurt himself.
- 2. We often deceive ourselves.
- 3. I myself heard the remark.

The pronouns my, our, thy, your, him, her, it, and them are used with self or selves to form compound personal pronouns.

These compound pronouns are sometimes used as reflexives, that is, as objects denoting the same person or thing as the subject of the verb; as,—

I let myself down with a rope.

They are also used to express emphasis; as,—

She herself read the book.

# COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

First Person.	Singular. myself,	Plural. ourselves,
Second Person.	thyself, yourself,	yourselves,
Third Person.	himself, herself, itself.	themselves.

### EXERCISE I.

Tell the person, number, gender, and case of each pronoun in the following exercises:—

- I. Something frightened the little animal, and it soumpered far away through the woods.
- 2. I listened with suspended breath, but not a soun came to my ears.
  - 3. Then they praised him, soft and low.—Tennyson.
  - 4. My son, if sinners entice thee, consent thou not. BIBLE

SHA

mu

– R

W are t

Ce When when Some

other

The any, & some,

nd them are used pronouns.

reflexives, that as the subject of

LURAL. selves,

rselves,

nselves.

each pronoun

and it soum-

a soun came

NNYSON.

ou not. — Bible.

- 5. He then led me to the highest pinnacle of the rock.

  -Addison.
- 6. Give every man thine ear, but few thy voice. —
- 7. It is excellent discipline for an author to feel that he must say all he has to say in the fewest possible words.

   RUSKIN.
  - 8. Boast not thyself of to-morrow;

    For thou knowest not what a day may bring forth.

    —BIBLE.

# LESSON XXVII.

# ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Which of the italicized words belo are used as adjectives? Which are used as pronouns?—

- 1. Many tickets were sold.
- 2. Many were unable to secure seats.
- 3. Look at this clock.
- 4. This is sold.

Certain words can be used to limit nouns or to stand for nouns. When such words are used with nouns, they are called adjectives; when they stand for nouns they are called adjective pronouns. Sometimes there is a difference of form; as, no (adj.), none (pro.); other (adj.), others (pro.).

The principal words used as adjective pronouns are all, another, any, both, each, either, few, many, neither, none, one, other, several, some, this, these, that, those.

### EXERCISE I.

Tell whether the italicized words in the following sentences are adjectives or pronouns, giving reasons in each case: -

- I. Many, alas! had fallen in battle. HAWTHORNE.
- 2. There is a calm for those who weep .-- J. Montgomery.
- 3. All are architects of fate, Working in these walls of time; Some with massive deeds and great, Some with ornaments of rhyme. - Longfellow.
- 4. Any life that is worth living must be a struggle. - DEAN STANLEY.
- 5. The man deserving the name is one whose thoughts and exertions are for others rather than for himself. -SIR WALTER
  - 6. All men think all men mortal but themselves. Young.
  - 7. Men at some time are masters of their fate. Shakespeare.
  - 8. This was the noblest Roman of them all. Shakespeare.
- 9. My worthy friend Sir Roger is one of those who is not only at peace with himself, but beloved and esteemed by all about him. - Addison.
- 10. It is one thing to be well informed; it is another to be wise. - ROBERTSON.
- 11. We too seldom think how much we owe to those formidable savages. - John Fiske.
  - 12. Few shall part where many meet. Campbell.

13. To know .

That which before us fies in daily life Is the prime wisdom. - MILTON.

(1)

T tenc italio

1 2 3

A calle

T ente Α

its fu W

noun clause

with

#### EXERCISE II.

Construct sentences containing the following words used (1) as adjectives, (2) as adjective pronouns:—

both, each, few, several, these, neither, none, many, that, other.

### LESSON XXVIII.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Tell how many assertions are made in each of the following sentences, read the principal statement, and state the office of the italicized part:—

- 1. We found a guide, who answered our questions.
- 2. The wind, which rose suddenly, had now ceased.
- 3. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

A part of a sentence that contains a subject and a predicate is called a clause.

The clause that expresses the leading or principal thought of a entence is called an independent or principal clause.

A clause that depends upon some other part of the sentence for its full meaning is called a dependent or subordinate clause.

Which words in the dependent clauses above refer to preceding nouns, and how are the dependent clauses joined to the independent clauses?

A word that refers to a preceding noun or pronoun, and connects with it a dependent clause, is called a relative pronoun.

NGFELLOW.

a struggle.

ing sentences

case: -

ONTGOMERY.

NE.

e thoughts -Sir Walter

es. — Young. Shakespeare.

SHAKESPEARE. Se who is esteemed

nother to

to those

The word to which a pronoun refers or relates is called its ante-The relative pronoun connects the clause of which it is a part to its antecedent.

The relative pronouns are who, which, that, and what. Who is applied to persons; as, -

Hail to the chief who in triumph advances. - Scott.

Which is applied to the lower animals and to things without life; as, —

- 1. Here is the horse which will take us to the end of our. journey.
- 2. Nature has, indeed, given us a soil which yields bounteously to the hands of industry. - WEBSTER.
- 3. And from thence to Philippi, which is the chief city of part of Macedonia, a colony.

That is applied to persons, to animals, and to things; as, -

- I. Thrice is he armed that hath his quarrel just.—Shakespeare.
- 2. A half-starved dog, that looked like Wolf, was skulking about the house. - IRVING.
  - 3. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid. BIBLE.

What is used without an antecedent expressed. It is equivalent to that which; as,-

She remembers what [that which] she reads.

As is sometimes used as a relative pronoun. It is then usually preceded by such; as, -

Let such as [those who] hear take heed.

force

E

A ante

T pria 0

> 7 W

Th used

Pro what soever of which it is a

what.

es. — Scott.

things without

e end of our

ields bounte-

chief city of

; as, \_\_

Shakespeare. s skulking

BIBLE.

equivalent

n usually

But is also used as a relative pronoun. It has a negative force; as,—

There is no fireside, howsoe'er defended, But has [that has not] one vacant chair.—Longfellow.

A relative clause may introduce an additional fact about the antecedent; as, —

They had one son, who had grown up to be the staff and pride of their age. — IRVING.

Or it may limit or restrict the meaning of the antecedent; as, -

The bird that soars on highest wing Builds on the ground her lowly nest.

That is preferred to who in restrictive clauses. Who is declined as follows:—

### SINGULAR OR PLURAL.

Nominative Case. who, Possessive Case. whose, Objective Case. whom.

The other relative pronouns are not declined, but whose is often used as if it were the possessive form of which; as,—

Bordered with trees whose gay leaves fly. - BRYANT.

### COMPOUND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Pronouns formed by adding ever or soever to who, which, and what are called compound relative pronouns; as, whoever, who-soever; whichever, whichsoever; whatever, whatsoever.

# EXERCISE 1.

Mention the relative pronouns in the following sentences, name their antecedents, tell what the province s connect, and

- I. He that lacks time to mourn lacks time to mend.
- 2. Where lies the land to which the ship would go?
- 3. My ramble soon led me to the church, which stood a little distance from the village. - IRVING.
- 4. What a man has learnt is of importance, but what he is, what he can do, what he will become, are more significant things. - HELPS.
- 5. He that is slow to anger is better than the mighty. -BIBLE.
- 6. A land that will not yield satisfactorily without irrigation, and whose best paying produce requires intelligent as well as careful husbandry, will never be an idle land. - WARNER.
  - All precious things, discovered late, To those that seek them issue 10rth. - TENNYSON.
  - 8. They are slaves who dare not be In the right with two or three. - LOWELL.
- 9. Here, then, I parted, sorrowfully, from the companion with whom I set out on my journey. - I. IMES
- 10. He who has sought renown about the world, and has reaped a full harvest of worldly favor, will find, after all, that there is no love, no admiration, no applause, so sweet to the soul as that which springs up in his native place.

P name intro restra

2 is a

found apart 3

signe 5.

on th

which 7.

the d — Јонк 8.

the le

9.

10.

### EXERCISE II.

Point out the relative pronouns in the following sentences, name their antecedents, and tell whether the relative clauses introduce additional facts about the antecedents, or limit and restrict their meaning.

- 1. He that is not with me is against me.
- 2. The man who provides a home for a poor neighbor is a greater benefactor of the poor than he who lays the foundation of a stately almshouse and never finishes a single apartment.—J. HAMILTON.
  - 3. Those who live without a plan have never any leisure.
- 4. The Carrier, who had turned his face from the door, signed to him to go if he would.—DICKENS.
- 5. Carefully then were covered the embers that glowed on the hearth-stone Longfellow.
- 6. Not far from the gateway they came to a bridge, which seemed to be built of iron.—HAWTHORNE.
- 7. The first spring wild-flowers, whose shy faces among the dry leaves and rocks are so welcome, yield no honey.

   John Burroughs.
- 8. The tongue is like a race-horse, which runs the faster the less weight it carries.—Addison.
  - 9. We were the first that ever burst Into that silent sea.—Coleridge.
  - On every breath that sweeps the sky
    The fresh dark acres furrowed lie,
    And ask the sower's hand.—BRYANT.

wing sentences,
s connect, and

vould go? which stood a

to mend.

but what he re significant

the mighty.

thout irrigantelligent as nd.—Warner.

TENNYSON.

ompanion

and has after all, so sweet e place.

A relative pronoun has the same person, number, and gender as its antecedent; as, -I.

- And will your mother pity me, Who am a maiden most forlorn? - Coleridge. 2.
- He prayeth best, who loveth best All things, both great and small. - COLERIDGE

# LESSON XXIX.

# COMPOSITION.

Compare any two of the following, and state clearly some of the most striking points of resemblance and difference in their structure, habits, or uses: -

Butterflies and Moths, Crabs and Lobsters, Toads and Frogs, Alligators and Crocodiles, Snakes and Eels, Rabbits and Hares, Clams and Oysters, Goats and Sheep.

# Model. — BUTTERFLIES AND MOTHS.

Butterflies and moth's when flying look very much alike. Butterflies fly only in the daytime, however, while most moths fly at night.

Both butterflies and moths have four wings. When a butterfly is at rest, it holds its wings erect. When a moth is at rest, its wings are folded over the body like a flat roof.

Butterflies have thread-like feelers, knobbed or club-shaped at the ends. Moths have thread-like or feathered feelers, tapering

How

pronou Who Whic

A pr

Wha

Whic tives;

Poin kind of

2. T

and gender as its

RIDGE.

RIDGE.

### LESSON XXX.

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

How are the italicized words used in the following sentences:—

- 1. Who comes here?
- 2. Which reached home first?
- 3. What is the news?

A pronoun used in asking a question is called an interrogative pronoun. The interrogative pronouns are who, which, and what.

Who refers to persons. It is declined like the relative who.

Which refers to persons or to things. It implies selection; as, -

Which of the brothers sings?
Which of the chairs do you prefer?

What refers to things; as, -

What was in the box?

Which and what are sometimes used as interrogative adjectives; as,—

Where are they now? What lands and skies Paint pictures in their friendly eyes? What hope deludes, what promise cheers, What pleasant voices fill their ears?—Longfellow.

#### EXERCISE I.

Point out the pronouns in the following sentences, tell the kind of each pronoun, and name its case:—

- I. Who can understand his errors?
- 2. The child sat silent beneath a tree, hushed in her

v some of the

n their struc-

rs, ocodil**es,** 

uch alik**e.** ost moths

a butteris at rest,

haped at tapering very breath by the stillness of the night, and all its attend-

ative

pron

an ir

an ir

a rela

4.

Fi

of pre

I.

2.

3.

4. to the

5. of — 6. 7.

- 3. Nearly all the most charming of the singing-birds prefer the early morning and the evening twilight for their vocal performances, though some of them sing far into the night. - M. THOMPSON.
  - 4. The stranger at my fireside cannot see The forms I see nor hear the sounds I hear; He but perceives what is; while unto me All that has been is visible and clear. - Longfellow.
- 5. All things that are on earth shall wholly pass away, Except the love of God, which shall live and last for aye.
- 6. He is the freeman whom the truth makes free. Cowper.
- 7. Ah! what is that sound which now bursts on his ear? - DIMOND.
- 8. Who, among the whole chattering crowd, can tell me of the forms and the precipices of the chain of tall white mountains that girded the horizon at noon yesterday? Who saw the narrow sunbeam that came out of the south, and smote upon their summits until they melted and mouldered away in a dust of blue rain? Who saw the dance of the dead clouds when the sunlight left them last night, and the west wind blew them before it like withered leaves? - Ruskin.

# EXERCISE II.

# Write sentences containing —

1. Who used as a relative pronoun in the nominative case; as a relative pronoun in the possessive case; as a reld all its attending-birds prefer for their vocal into the night.

hear;

LONGFELLOW.

pass away, last for aye.

e. — Cowper. on his ear?

an tell me tall white lay? Who south, and mouldered ce of the t, and the?—Ruskin.

minative as a relative pronoun in the objective case; as an interrogative pronoun.

- 2. Which used as an adjective; as a relative pronoun; as an interrogative pronoun.
- 3. What used as an adjective; as a relative pronoun; as an interrogative pronoun.
- 4. That used as an adjective; as an adjective pronoun; as a relative pronoun.

### LESSON XXXI.

### CORRECT USE OF PRONOUNS.

I.

Fill the blanks with nominative, possessive, or objective forms of pronouns. Tell why each form should be used:—

- 1. Do unto others as --- would that --- should do unto ---.
- 2. Gray-headed shepherd, hast spoken well.
- My country, 'tis of ——,
  Sweet land of liberty,
  Of —— I sing.
- 4. I remember hearing say that grandfather lived to the age of ninety-nine years.
- 5. He devoted —— leisure to studying the political history of —— country.
  - 6. art the man.
  - 7. The maidens resumed labor.

I had I. prov I his

I

M each W nour

two V the

are form
G
H

	LESSONS	f22	•	
8 ""	LESSONS	IN EN	IGLISH.	
home."	ny friends," said	to	o —, "this is to be	<b>&gt;_</b>
9. Come	_		, "this is to be	_
10. The box	and — w ks were sent to not try if — w	ill meet	at the house.	
II. I would	ks were sent to	an	at the house.	
12	not try if v	vere	u —.	
13. Do -	deliver	Vollr m.	000	4
15. Do	will deliver trouble — ?	IA T	essage.  s — coming?  I ow many are with —  did —	
17.	know — ?	16 L	coming?	i i
17. — come 19. — is —	es here?	18	ow many are with —	_,
15 —	—?	20 E	did send?	i
		20. I.	ollow	
Copy the con	ıı.			
nouns True	ng sentences, fills		lanks with suitable pr	54
1 cll in ea	ch case why the	ng ine b	lanks with suitable or	
I. The commi	ttee doo: 1	orm cho	lanks with suitable prosen should be used:— without leaving—	i
•		matter	Without loan	TV.
2. All passenge	ers must show —	•	- leaving	- 1
3. Every passen	ger must show -	— tick	ets.	
4. Somebody let	ft and snow.	- tic	ket	
5. Men at some	ambrella			. *
6. Neither would 7. Each soldier c	time are master	s of —	- fate.	X
7. Each soldier c	arried	- was in	the wrong	
8. Hann	arried — own	gun.	wrong.	
Who	y, thrice happy,	every o	ne	
9. One who	TUDOL	well bec	run	
9. One who would to. The committee	succeed must l	earn to	41 .	1
received from	has offered to	refund	mink for —	
II. Every man	company.	- ozumu	the amount which	
II. Every man musi	bear — own	burden		
al think al	I men mortal bu	t		
1	• •			

"this is to bethe house.

oming?

y are with --send?

ith suitable proild be used: -

leaving -

ong.

unt which

13. He was surrounded by a shouting multitude, most of had been born in the country —— he had helped to found.

14. At length they came within full sight of the palace, proved to be very large and lofty.

15. A man —— flattereth his neighbor, spreadeth a net for his feet.

16. There is a calm for those —— weep.

Few, few were they ---- swords of old . 17. Won the fair land in —— we dwell.

### LESSON XXXII.

### REVIEW OF PRONOUNS.

#### EXERCISE I.

What is a pronoun? How does a pronoun differ from a noun? Mention the different classes of pronouns and give examples of each class.

What is a personal pronoun? How many case forms has the pronoun of the first person? How is each used?

Mention the second person singular, and tell how it is used. Give two uses of the pronoun you.

Which person has a distinction of gender? State special uses of the pronouns of the masculine, feminine, and neuter genders. How are the possessive forms of personal pronouns used?

Mention the compound personal pronouns, and tell how they are formed.

Give an example of their use as reflexives; for emphasis.

How does an adjective pronoun differ from an adjective?

Define a relative pronoun. State the distinctions in the use of

who, which, and what. Give a sentence in which as is used as a relative pronoun; in which but is so used.

What is an interrogative pronoun? Name the interrogative pronouns.

of i

moi

very

THI

### EXERCISE II.

Parse the pronouns in the following sentences: -

To parse a pronoun, tell -

- I. The kind of pronoun.
- 2. Its person.
- 3. Its number.
- 4. Its gender.
- 5. Its case.
- 6. Its construction.

Example. - And then I think of one who in her youthful beauty died.

- 1. I is a personal pronoun, first person, singular number, common gender, nominative case, subject of the verb think.\*
- 2. One is an adjective pronoun, third person, singular number, feminine gender, objective case, object of the preposition of.
- 3. Who is a relative pronoun, third person, singular number, feminine gender, agreeing with its antecedent one, and nominative case, subject to the verb died.
- 4. Her is a personal pronoun, third person, singular number, feminine gender, possessive case, depending upon the noun beauty.
- I. The moon did not rise till after ten, so I had two hours of intense darkness during which I used my ears instead of my eyes. M.  $T_{\text{HOMPSON}}$ .

<sup>\*</sup> Or follow a briefer form, similar to the one suggested on p. 46.

is used as a

gative pro-

2. And what is so rare as a day in June? - LOWELL.

3. Hang around your walls pictures which shall tell stories of mercy, hope, courage, faith, and charity. — D. G. MITCHELL.

4. A few hoped, and many feared, that some scheme of monarchy would be established. — John Fiske.

5. With merry songs we mock the wind
That in the pine top grieves,
And slumber long and sweetly
On beds of oaken leaves.—Bryant.

6. I witnessed a striking incident in bird life which was very suggestive. — M. Thompson.

7. Hast thou a charm to stay the morning star?—Coleridge.

8. He laid him down and closed his eyes. - Souther.

Triumphant arch, that fill'st the sky
When storms prepare to part,
I ask not proud Philosophy
To teach me what thou art.—CAMPBELL.

10. He that only rules by terror

Doeth grievous wrong.—Tennyson.

### LESSON XXXIII.

### STUDY OF SELECTION.

THE LANDING OF THE PILCRIM FATHERS IN NEW ENGLAND.

I.

The breaking waves dashed high
On a stern and rock-bound coast,

youthful

er, com-

number.

number, ninative

iumber, *aut*y.

d two

And the woods against a stormy sky Their giant branches tossed;

II

And the heavy night hung dark
The hills and waters o'er,
When a band of exiles moored their bark
On the wild New England shore.

III.

Not as the conqueror comes,

They, the true-hearted, came;

Not with the roll of the stirring drums,

And the trumpet that sings of fame;

IV.

Not as the flying come,
In silence and in fear;
They shook the depths of the desert gloom
With their hymns of lofty cheer.

v.

Amidst the storm they sang,
And the stars heard, and the sea;
And the sounding aisles of the dim woods rang
To the anthem of the free!

VI.

The ocean eagle soared
From his nest by the white wave's foam,
And the rocking pines of the forest roared,
This was their welcome home!

Wh What What two lir

sion d

#### VII.

There were men with hoary hair
Amidst that pilgrim band;—
Why had they come to wither there,
Away from their childhood's land?

#### VIII.

There was woman's fearless eye,

Lit by her deep love's truth;

There was manhood's brow serenely high,

And the fiery heart of youth.

### IX.

What sought they thus afar?
Bright jewels of the mine?
The wealth of seas, the spoils of war?
They sought a faith's pure shrine!

#### X

Ay, call it holy ground,

The soil where first they trod;

They left unstained what there they found;

Freedom to worship God.

FELICIA HEMANS.

What is this poem about? Read the first two stanzas.

What is meant by a stern coast? What is the meaning of rock-bound? What is the meaning of the third and fourth lines? How would the first two lines in the second stanza be expressed in prose? On what occasion did the waves dash high? What is an exile? What is meant by mooring their bark?

Read the next two stanzas. What do the first six lines of these stanzas tell?

Ans. They tell how the exiles did not come.

How many classes of persons are mentioned whose coming was unlike that of the Pilgrims? How does the conqueror come? How do the flying come? What do the two remaining lines of these stanzas tell?

Read the fifth and sixth stanzas. What does the fifth stanza describe? What does the sixth stanza do? What welcomed them?

Read the seventh and eighth stanzas. What do these stanzas tell? Ans. They tell who were in the band.

How many classes of persons are mentioned? Name each. What is the meaning of hoary?

Read the first question in the ninth stanza. Supply words making the second question complete. Express the third question fully. What does the last line of this stanza tell? What is meant by their seeking a faith's pure shrine?

Ans. Seeking a place where they could worship God in their own way. Read the last stanza. What place should be called holy ground? Why?

Copy the poem, and commit it to memory.

# LESSON XXXIV.

# COMPOSITION.

# THE PILGRIM FATHERS.

Find out what you can about The Pilgrim Fathers, and then tell in your own words -

1. Who the Pilgrim Fathers were, and what caused them to leave their native country.

2. and

3. they had

> P each

1.

2. з.

4 adje

De adject langua

limi

A I.

lines of these

ing was unlike
How do the
anzas tell?
nza describe?

inzas tell?

each. What

ords making fully. What fir seeking a

ir own way. *y ground?*  2. Tell where they went first, how long they remained there, and why they decided to come to America.

3. Describe their voyage to the New World, tell where they landed, and mention some of the hardships which they had to undergo on their arrival.

### LESSON XXXV.

### CLASSES OF ADJECTIVES.

Point out the adjectives in the following sentences, and tell what each expresses:—

- 1. I bring fresh showers for the thirsting flowers.
- 2. The sun is warm, the sky is clear.
- 3. A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump.
- 4. Three years she grew in sun and shower.

An adjective that expresses quality or kind is a descriptive adjective; as, a happy boy; a narrow path; a wooden bench.

Descriptive adjectives that are formed from proper nouns are called proper adjectives. They begin with capital letters; as, American forests; the English language.

An adjective that points out or denotes number or quantity is a limiting adjective; as, this week; two hours; much trouble.

A limiting adjective may be used -

1. Simply to point out; as, this, that, the, an, you, yonder.

nd then

iem to

- 2. To express a definite number; as, one, two, fourteen, fifty.
- 3. To express an indefinite number or quantity; as, any, little, much, many, some.
- 4. To show in what order things are arranged; as, first, second, third.

The adjectives the and an or a (the shortened form of an) are sometimes called articles. The is called the definite article. An or a is called the indefinite article.

6

7

8

9 State

IO.

II. 12.

13.

14.

15.

rugg

able

-TEN

of th

The is used to point out some particular person, thing, or class.

An or a is used to point out any one person or thing of a class.

An is used before a word beginning with a vowel sound; as, an apple; an initial; an hour (h is silent).

A is used before a word beginning with a consonant sound; as, a boat; a day; many a one (one begins with the consonant sound of w); a unit (unit begins with the consonant sound of y).

An adjective formed from two simple words is called a compound adjective; as, -

He turned the well-worn leaves.

# EXERCISE I.

Point out the adjectives in the following sentences, state the office of each, and tell what kind of adjective it is:-

- I. Thirty-two statues of various sizes were found in this field.
- 2. Its chief attractions were a never-failing breeze at night, good water, and a large garden in the centre of a cleared space.
- 3. Hark! 'tis the twanging horn o'er yonder bridge. -COWPER.

teen, fifty.

first, second,

of an) are e article.

or class. of a class. ound; as,

ound; as, ant sound

npound

ate the

n this

night, eared

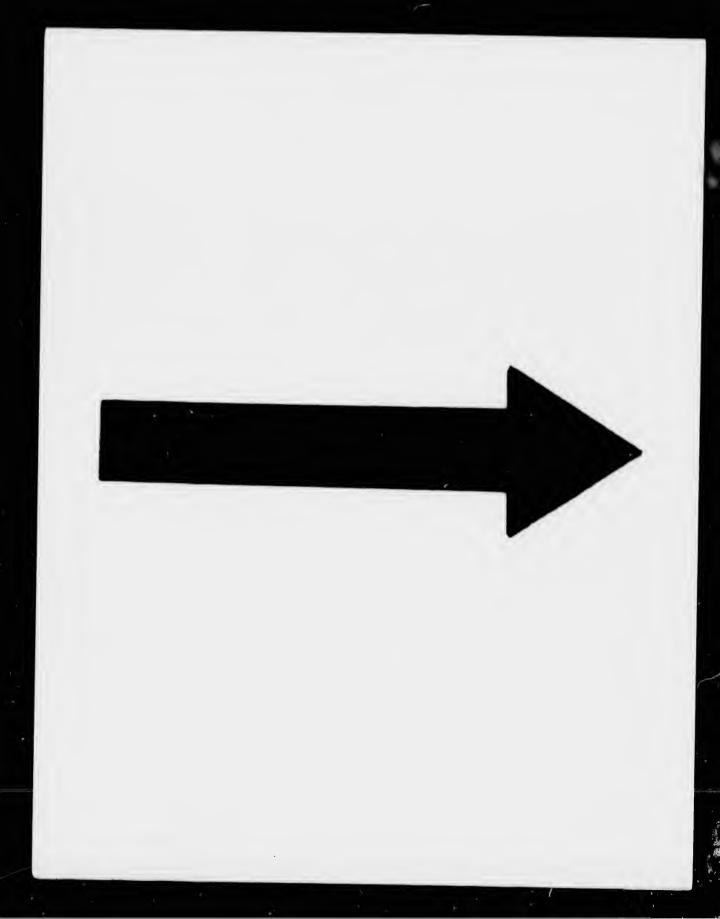
re. —

- 4. We met several men riding at a rapid pace.
- 5. Across its antique portico

  Tall poplar trees their shadows throw.—Longfellow.
- 6. This long march through the primeval fores. .nd over rugged and trackless mountains was one of the most remarkable exploits of the war. John Fiske.
- 7. O blessings on his kindly voice and on his silver hair! —TENNYSON.
- 8. Suddenly there was a gentle little tap on the inside of the lid. HAWTHORNE.
- 9. The thirteen colonies were now free and independent States. HAWTHORNE.
  - 10. A certain man fell among thieves. BIBLE.
  - 11. Small service is true service while it lasts. Wordsworth.
  - 12. All the air a solemn stillness holds. GRAY.
  - 13. With a slow and noiseless footstep

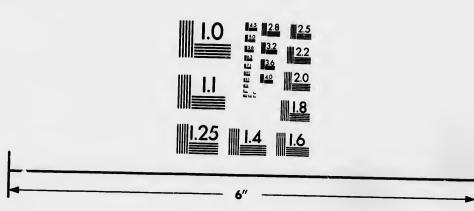
    Comes that messenger divine. Long/ELLOW.
  - With fingers weary and worn,
    With eyelids he vy and red,
    A woman sat, in unwomanly rags,
    Plying her needle and thread.—Hood.
  - 15. All the little boys and girls,
    With rosy cheeks and flaxen curls,
    And sparkling eyes and teeth like pearls,
    Tripping and skipping, ran merrily after
    The wonderful music with shouting and laughter.

- Browning.



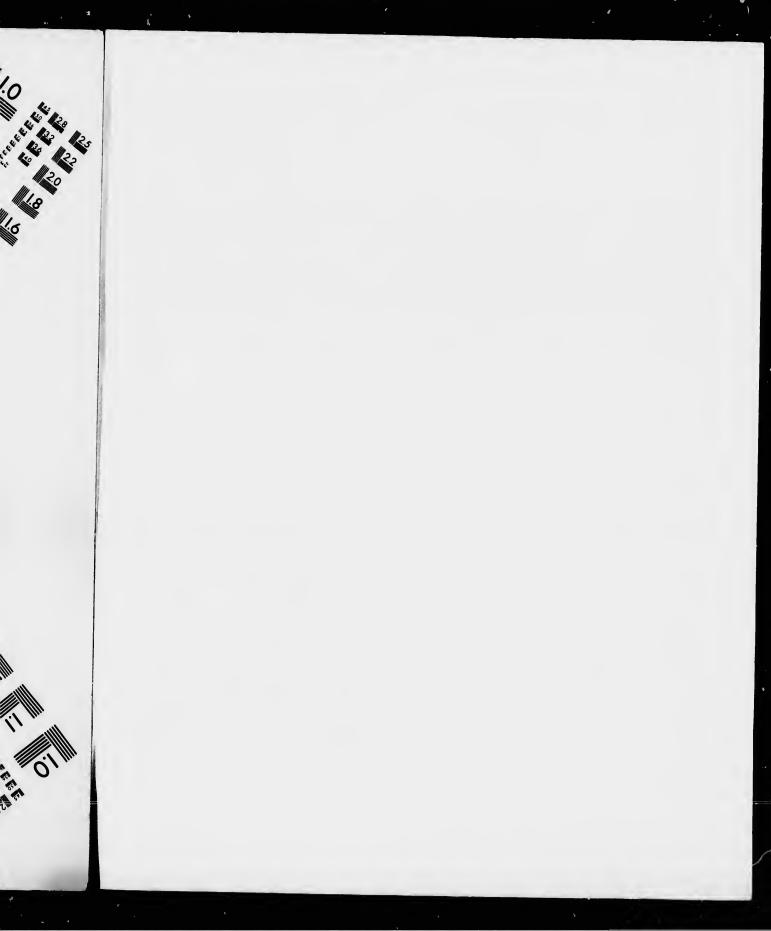
M1.25 M1.3 M1.50

# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580 (716) 872-4503 STATE OF THE STATE



### EXERCISE II.

Tell whether an or a should be used before each of the following words:

qua

call

deg long

clas

tha

deg sho

all his

for for omi

or con

tive

hammock,	image,	hour,	youth,
poem,	bird,	mountain,	honor,
author,	instant,	eagle,	useful,
errand,	union,	orange,	one.

# EXERCISE III.

Write sentences containing the following words used as adjectives:

strong,	any,	many,	brittle, every, modern, each, other,	prompt,
fair,	all,	curved,		distant,
both,	dutiful,	little,		neither,
some,	few,	much,		another,
clear,	brief,	certain,		several.

# LESSON XXXVI.

# COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Tell how many forms the adjective long has in the following sentences, and what each form expresses:—

- 1. This work requires a long pencil.
- 2. Your pencil is longer than mine.
- 3. Here is the longest pencil in the box.

Adjectives have different forms to express different degrees of quality. This change of form is called comparison.

The form of an adjective that simply expresses the quality is called the positive degree; as, long, short.

The form of an adjective that expresses a higher or a lower degree of the quality is called the comparative degree; as, longer, shorter.

The comparative degree is used in comparing two things or classes of things; as, Charles is *older* than Ralph; Pears are *dearer* than apples.

The form of an adjective that expresses the highest or the lowest degree of the quality is called the superlative degree; as, longest, shortest.

The superlative degree is used in comparing one thing with all others of the same kind; as, Charles is the *oldest* boy in his class.

Most adjectives of one syllable add er to the simple form of the adjective, to form the comparative, and est, to form the superlative. If the adjective ends in e, one e is omitted; as,—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
long,	longer, .	longest.
wise,	wiser,	wisest.

Most adjectives of more than one syllable prefix more or less to the simple form of the adjective, to form the comparative, and most or least, to form the superlative; as,—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
careful,	more careful,	most careful.
fortunate,	less fortunate,	least fortunate.

used as

ich of the

outh.

onor,

seful,

ie.

mpt, ant, her, ther, eral.

ng sen-

A few adjectives of two syllables, ending in sounds that unite easily with the sound of er or est, may be compared by adding er or est; as, noble, happy, narrow, tender, pleasant.

The following adjectives are compared irregularly:-

degr

awa

mos

lowe or

 $\mathcal{U}$ 

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
ill,	worse,	worst.
far,	farther,	farthest.
[forth,]	further,	furthest. furthermost.
fore,	former,	{ foremost. first.
good,	better,	best.
late,	latter, later,	last. latest.
little,	less,	least.
many, $much,$	more,	most.
old,	elder, older,	eldest.
	(older,	oldest.

The two adjectives this and that are inflected for number; thus,-

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
this,	these.
that,	those.

hat unite

y:-

1us. ---

EXERCISE I.

Mention each adjective in the following sentences, name its degree, and tell what it modifies:—

- I. Choose the timbers with greatest care. Longfellow.
- 2. Of all the old festivals, however, that of Christmas awakens the strongest and most heartfelt associations.—Irving.
  - 3. He who ascends to mountain tops shall find
    The loftiest peaks most wrapt in clouds and snow.

- Bryant.

- 4. The edges and corners of the box were carved with most wonderful skill. HAWTHORNE.
  - 5. She is more precious than rubies. BIBLE.
- 6. We started immediately after an early luncheon, followed an excellent road all the way, and were back in time or dinner at half-past six.
  - 7. The day was cloudy, and the sea very rough.

#### EXERCISE II.

Write the comparison of the following adjectives: -

narrow,	noble,	deep,	famous,	ancient,
beautiful,	clear,	swift,	good,	expensive,
generous,	distant,	formal,	cheerful,	earnest,
lofty,	merry,	heavy,	near,	attractive,
lovely,	brief,	many,	bad,	little.

Examples. — POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
noble,	nobler,	noblest.
generous,	more generous.	most generous.

# LESSON XXXVII.

# CHOICE OF ADJECTIVES.

Tell the office of each word in Italics, in the following sentences: -

- 1. He has built a handsome house.
- 2. The rose is beautiful flower.
- 3. What a pretty vase this is!
- 4. She is a lovely child.
- 5. Here the splendid ice-palace met our view.

100

div

adi

ind

tha

tin

nu

- 6. The dress was trimmed with real lace.
- 7. This peach is delicious.
- 8. Look at this ugly worm.
- 9. Did you have a pleasant walk?
- 10. The carpet has a bright border.
- 11. The Chinese have many queer customs.
- 12. He felt the awful solitude of the desert.

Which of these words are applied to things pleasing to the sight? Mention three things that may be called pretty. Mention two things that may be called handsome. To what may the word beautiful be

Find a word that is applied to something not pleasing to the sight.

What kind of child may be called lovely? Would it be right to apply the word lovely to articles of food? To articles of dress?

Which of these words implies something showy or brilliant? Should we use the word splendid to describe a walk or a ride?

Which of the words above implies fear and reverence? May the word awful be applied to an article of dress?

What is meant by real lace?

### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

1. Write sentences showing the correct use of the following adjectives: —

handsome,	awful,	real,	bright,
pretty,	delicious,	beautiful,	ugly,
lovely,	pleasant,	splendid, .	queer.

2. Write sentences, using adjectives to describe the things named below. Choose such adjectives as will exactly express your meaning:—

a pudding,	a cloak,	a thunder-shower,
a storm,	a diamond,	a drive,
a horse,	a friend,	a sunset.

### LESSON XXXVIII.

### REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES.

### EXERCISE I.

What is an adjective? Into what two classes may adjectives be divided?

Name three adjectives that are used to point out things; two adjectives that express a definite number; two that express an indefinite number; two that express an indefinite quantity; two that indicate order of arrangement.

State the difference in meaning between the and an or a. Distinguish between the use of an and a, and illustrate by examples.

Name two adjectives that change their form to denote the plural number. Give their plural forms.

What is meant by the comparison of adjectives? What are the

nt? things iful be

nces : -

ght. ght to

Should

y the

three degrees of comparison called? Define each, and give an

How is the comparative formed? Give examples. How is the superlative formed? Give examples.

What is meant by irregular comparison? Illustrate.

Mention two adjectives that are compared by means of suffixes; two by means of adverbs; two that are compared irregularly; and two that are not usually compared.

Give the comparative and superlative forms of few; heavy; amiable; swift; useful; fierce; mighty; witty; gentle; good; bad; late; little; ill; much; many.

### EXERCISE II.

Parse the adjectives in the following sentences: -

To parse an adjective, tell-

- 1. The kind of adjective.
- 2. Its degree, if the adjective can be compared.
- 3. Its construction.

Example. - The wind was cold.

- 1. The is a limiting adjective, modifying the noun wind.
- 2. Cold is a descriptive adjective of the positive degree. It completes the meaning of the verb was, and modifies the noun
- 1. It is the most beautiful shrub that ever sprang out of the earth.
- 2. Every good tree bringeth forth good fruit, but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

sle

Ne of t

8

ful ple arts

I only arra

I

back kitc fron top give an

w is the

suffixes; rly; and

heavy; l; bad;

e. It

noun

it of

cor-

- 3 Such pleasures nerve the arm for strife, Bring joyous thoughts and golden dreams.
- 4. This door led into a passage out of which opened four sleeping-rooms.
  - 5. Wide is the gate, and broad is the way.
- 6. In the middle of the eighteenth century there were four New England colonies. Fiske.
- 7. Birds of the polar areas of snow and ice are white, those of the tropics are vari-colored and brilliant-hued.—M. Thompson.
- 8. A beautiful form is better than a beautiful face; a beautiful behavior is better than a beautiful form: it gives a higher pleasure than statues or pictures; it is the finest of the fine arts.—Emerson.

### LESSON XXXIX.

### STUDY OF A DESCRIPTION.

### THE OLD ANGLER'S COTTAGE.

I found the old angler living in a small cottage containing only one room, but a perfect curiosity in its method and arrangement.

It was on the skirts of the village, on a green bank, a little back from the road, with a small garden in front, stocked with kitchen herbs, and adorned with a few flowers. The whole front of the cottage was overrun with a honeysuckle. On the top was a ship for a weathercock.

The interior was fitted up in a truly nautical style, the old angler's ideas of comfort and convenience having been acquired on the berth-deck of a man-of-war. A hammock was slung from the ceiling, which, in the daytime, was lashed up so as to take but little room. From the centre of the chamber hung a model of a ship of his own workmanship. Two or three chairs, a table, and a large sea-chest, formed the principal movables. The mantel-piece was decorated with sea-shells; over which hung a quadrant flanked by two woodcuts of most bitter-looking naval commanders. His implements for angling were carefully disposed on nails and hooks about the room. On a shelf was arranged his library, containing a work on angling, much worn, a Bible covered with canvas, an odd volume or two of voyages, a nautical almanac, and a book of songs.

WASHINGTON IRVING.

What is the title of this piece? What is an angler?

What does the first sentence tell? How many rooms were in the cottage? What was a curiosity?

Where was the cottage? What is meant by the *skirts* of the village? Where did the cottage stand? How far back from the road was it?

What was in front of the cottage? What did the garden contain? What is an herb? Mention two or three kinds of herbs that are commonly raised in gardens. What else was in the garden? What is the meaning of adorned? What flowers do you think were growing in the garden?

Describe the front of the cottage. What was on the top of it? What is a weathercock?

What does the third paragraph describe? What is the *interior* of a house? What is meant by a *nautical* style? What led the old angler to fit up his cottage in the style of a seaman?

the ch tain? is a qu two w

De

angle stock weath

hamn

naval

W

De were

vere Wi How was his hammock arranged? What hung from the centre of the chamber? What movable articles of furniture did the room contain? What decorated the mantel-piece? What hung over it? What is a quadrant? What is meant by the quadrant's being flanked by the two woodcuts? What hung on the nails and hooks about the room? Where was the library? Of what books was it composed?

### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

I.

Describe in your own words The Old Angler's Cottage.

TT.

Write sentences, showing the correct use of the following words: —

cottage,	curiosity,	arrangement,
herbs,	adorned,	overrun,
interior,	nautical,	acquired,
ceiling,	lashed,	decorated,
voyages,	canvas,	almanac.
	herbs, interior, ceiling,	herbs, adorned, interior, nautical, ceiling, lashed,

### LESSON XL.

### COMPOSITION.

Describe some room that you have seen. Tell what things were in the room, and how they were arranged.

Write a suitable heading for your description.

ovables.
r which
-looking
carefully
nelf was

h worn, voyages,

the old

acquired

as slung

so as to

hung a

e chairs,

IRVING.

e in the

village? s it? contain?

re comit is the ig in the

of it?

*ior* of a l angler

### LESSON XLI.

# TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

Point out the verb in each of the following sentences, name its subject,\* and tell which word limits the action expressed by the verb:—

- 1. The sexton rang the bell.
- 2. A boy delivered the message.
- 3. The frost killed the plant.

The noun or pronoun that limits the action expressed by a verb is the object\* of the verb; as, We crossed the bridge.

Tell which verbs in the following sentences take objects to complete their meaning, and which do not take objects:—

- 1. The traveller sold his horse.
- 2. Bees gather honey.
- 3. The sun shines.
- 4. The ship sailed.

A verb that takes an object is called a transitive verb; as, Henry threw the ball.

A verb that does not take an object is called an intransitive verb; as, Birds fly.

The same word may be used as a transitive verb in one sentence, and as an intransitive verb in another; as,—

The wind blows the dust. (Transitive.)
The wind blows. (Intransitive.)

as, –

O tive

S objec

eyes

2. 3. 4.

5. Chau

6.

men 8.

7.

and — C.

<sup>\*</sup> These terms as applied to nouns refer to what is called the grammatical or bare subject, and object, and not to the logical or complete subject, and object.

Some intransitive verbs have a complete meaning in themselves; as,—

The rain falls.

Other intransitive verbs must be followed by a noun or an adjective to complete their meaning; as,—

- 1. He was a statesman.
- 2. The day is cloudy.

### EXERCISE I.

Select the transitive verbs, and name the subject and the object of each: —

- 1. He shrugged his shoulders, shook his head, cast up his eyes, but said nothing.—IRVING.
  - 2. Each takes his seat, and each receives his share.
  - 3. We scatter seeds with careless hand.
  - 4. Can the blind lead the blind?—BIBLE.
- 5. Do many good works, and speak few vanities. Chaucer,
  - 6. We carved not a line, and we raised not a stone, But we left him alone in his glory.—WOLFE.
- 7. The heavens declare the glory of God, and the firmament showeth his handiwork. BIBLE.
  - 8. The warrior bowed his crested head. HEMANS.
- 9. The doe lifted her head a little with a quick motion, and turned her ear to the south. Had she heard something?

  -C. D. WARNER.

a verb

name its

by the

to com-

b; as,

isitive

ntence,

*tical* or bject. 10. In the cold moist earth we laid her, when the forests cast the leaf,

And we wept that one so lovely should have a life so brief.—BRYANT.

#### EXERCISE II.

Tell whether the verbs in the following sentences are transitive or intransitive, mention the objects of the transitive verbs, and tell what complete the meanings of the incomplete intransitive verbs:—

- I. A tear stood in his bright blue eye. Longfellow.
- 2. A rill of water trickles down the cliff. HAWTHORNE.
- 3. The Piper advanced, and the children followed. Browning.
- 4. My heart leaps up when I behold a rainbow in the sky. WORDSWORTH.
  - 5. The daffodil is our doorside queen. BRYANT.
- 6. The next day Parliament took the formal vote upon the resolution.
  - 7. Behold the fowls of the air. BIBLE.
  - 8. The fish swam by the castle wall,
    And they seemed joyous, each and all.—Byron.
  - 9. Open then I flung the shutter, when, with many a flirt and flutter,
    - In there stepped a stately raven of the saintly days of -yore. Poe.
  - 10. The fair breeze blew, the white foam flew. -- COLERIDGE.

Wi trans

> Wi intra

Te

A subje

subje

forests

a life

transiverbs, itransi-

ne. wed. —

in the

on the

any a

days

ERIDGE.

EXERCISE III.

Write sentences containing the following words used as transitive verbs: —

learn, drink, write, watch, set, speaks, saw, flew, raise, lay.

### EXERCISE IV.

Write sentences containing the following words used as intransitive verbs:—

roar, grow, fall, write, watch, speaks, lie, sit, rise, flew.

## LESSON XLII.

## ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE.

Tell in how many ways each thought is expressed in the following sentences:—

- 1. The governor signed the bill.
- 2. The bill was signed by the governor.
- 3. A hound chased the deer.
- 4. The deer was chased by a hound.

A transitive verb may represent the person or thing named by its subject as acting or as being acted upon.

A transitive verb that represents the person or thing named by its subject as acting is said to be in the active voice; as, Columbus discovered America.

A transitive verb that represents the person or thing named by its subject as being acted upon is said to be in the passive voice; as, America was discovered by Columbus.

The object of the verb in the active form becomes the subject of the verb in the passive form. The active voice makes the agent prominent, while the passive voice makes the object of the action prominent.

Some verbs usually intransitive become transitive by means of a preposition, and take the passive voice; as,—

He disposed of the goods.

The goods were disposed of by him.

### EXERCISE I.

Tell the voice of each transitive verb in the following sentences, giving in each case a reason for your statement:—

- 1. The frightened animal sought the open country.
- 2. Our guide had never visited the cave.
- 3. The building was destroyed by fire, but some of the furniture was saved.
  - 4. The guest was admitted into the parlor.
  - 5. The portrait attracted his notice at once.
- 6. The petition was signed by a number of prominent citizens.
  - 7. He holds him with his glittering eye.—Coleridge.
- 8. Many interesting discoveries were made among these broken cliffs. HAWTHORNE.
- 9. He shrugged his shoulders, shook his head, cast up his eyes, but said nothing.—Irving.

10.

11. 12. befor

creep choly home

Re voice

Fir a fact a con

Th A in the d by its ice; as,

bject of agent action

ns of a

g sen-

f the

inent

hese

his

10. The farmer swung the scythe or turned the hay,

And 'twixt the heavy swaths his children were at play.

— BRYANT.

11. On Christmas eve the bells were rung.—Scott.

12. The schoolmaster swept and smoothed the ground before the door, trimmed the long grass, trained the ivy and creeping plants which hung their drooping heads in melancholy neglect; and gave to the outer walls a cheery air of home.—DICKENS.

#### EXERCISE II.

Rewrite the sentences in the preceding exercise, changing the voice of each transitive verb.

### LESSON XLIII.

#### MODE.

Find in the following sentences a verb that asserts something as a fact, one that asserts something as doubtful, and one that expresses a command:—

- 1. He speaks distinctly.
- 2. If he be at home, we shall see him.
- 3. Speak the truth.

The manner of asserting is called the mode of the verb.

A verb that asserts a thing as a fact or asks a direct question is in the indicative mode; as,—

The river is deep.

Is the river deep?

A verb that expresses something as conditional or doubtful is in the subjunctive mode; as,—

If he were ill, he would inform us. Take heed, lest thou fall.

A verb in the subjunctive mode is generally preceded by if, though, lest, unless, except, or some similar word.

The verb in a conditional clause is not always in the subjunctive mode. When the verb expresses doubt or denial it is in the subjunctive mode, but when it expresses certainty it is in the indicative mode; as,—

If the law be [Subjunctive] unjust, it should be repealed. If the law is [Indicative] unjust, it must be enforced.

A verb that expresses a command or an entreaty is in the imperative mode; as,—

Close the gate.
Forgive us our debts.

### EXERCISE 1.

Tell what each verb expresses in the following sentences, and name its mode: —

- I. Consider the lilies of the field. BIBLE.
- 2. The blue smoke widened slowly upward through the quiet August atmosphere. Lowell.
  - 3. I stand upon my native hills again.
  - 4. Thine own friend and thy father's friend, forsake not.
  - 5. If you were in my place you would think differently.
  - 6. Though this be madness, yet there is method in't.
  - 7. Turn away thine eyes, lest they behold vanity.
  - 8. Though he slay me, yet will I trust him.

I C Shak

mod

mod

mod

asser used

Tactio

tive

cede

tful is in

though,

bjunctive the subndicative

pealed. ed.

in the

s, and

h the

not. ntly. 9. Last night, the moon had a golden ring,
And to-night no moon we see. — Longfellow.

10. If fortune serve me, I'll requite this kindness. --

### EXERCISE II.

- 1. Write three sentences containing verbs in the indicative mode.
- 2. Write three sentences containing verbs in the subjunctive mode.
- 3. Write three sentences containing verbs in the imperative mode.

### LESSON XLIV.

### THE INFINITIVE.

Select from the following sentences forms of verbs that do not assert, but that name actions, like nouns, and tell how they are used:—

- 1. To err is human.
- 2. They intend to return soon.
- 3. Doing nothing is tiresome.

The form of the verb that does not assert but that merely names action or being, like a noun, is called the infinitive.

There are two infinitives, the simple infinitive, and the infinitive in ing.

The simple infinitive is the simple form of the verb, alone or preceded by to; as,—

Let him go, I expect to go.

The simple form, without to, is used alone, or after a few of the most common verbs, such as may, can, must, shall, will, bid, dare, do, let, make, need, hear, and see; as, Why flee? Do not flee.

The form with to is employed in most of the uses of the simple infinitive.\*

The infinitive in ing, also called the participial infinitive or gerund, is formed by adding ing to the simple form of the verb; as,—

Learn the luxury of doing good.

The infinitive, like a noun, may be used as subject or object; and, like a verb, it may take an object, if transitive, or may have modifiers; as,—

- I. To retreat is impossible.
- 2. I decided to remain at home.
- 3. There is no prospect of finding the treasure.

### EXERCISE I.

Classify the infinitives in the following sentences, giving reasons for your statements:—

- 1. I like to look on a scene like this.
- 2. Let music swell the breeze.
- 3. The rain had ceased to patter, and now began to fall with a steady determination.
  - 4. There was no difficulty in finding the river.
  - 5. But where to find that happiest spot below,
    Who can direct, when all pretend to know?—Goldsmith.

to ac

7. 8.

thum 9.

the P

think, ing a

Wr infini

Tell of spec

1.

2.

з. the s

4.

<sup>\*</sup> To was originally a preposition, used with the infinitive only in certain relations. It is now a mere prefix, or sign of the infinitive in most of its uses. As this is the only one of the infinitive forms that is distinctive, it is commonly named as the infinitive. The other forms are, however, equally true infinitives in origin and in use

of the

simple

ive or verb;

bject ;
have

iving

fall

rela-. As monly

MITH.

6. A man has no more right to say an uncivil thing than to act one. — Dr. Johnson.

7. He hears the parson pray and preach. - Longfellow.

8. As he approached the stream, his heart began to thump. — IRVING.

9. But it must be understood that we did not go to see the Pyramids. We went only to look at them. — A. B. EDWARDS.

10. There are two opposite ways by which some men make a figure in the world; one by talking faster than they think, and the other by holding their tongues and not thinking at all.—IRVING.

### EXERCISE II.

Write sentences containing (1) simple infinitives, (2) participial infinitives formed from the following verbs:—

find, break, choose, lose, sell, build, hear, spend, meet, have.

## LESSON XLV.

### THE PARTICIPLE.

Tell of what verbs the italicized words are forms, and which parts of speech they most resemble:—

1. Out came the children running.

2. We beheld a horseman approaching leisurely.

3. The company, seated round the fire, welcomed the stranger.

4. We sailed by an island covered with large trees.

The form of the verb that is part adjective and part verb is called a participle. The participle does not assert, but assumes or implies action or being. It qualifies a noun or pronoun, like an adjective, and takes modifiers like a verb. A participle from a transitive verb takes an object.

A participle that denotes unfinished action is called a present or imperfect participle; as, hearing, writing.

participle that denotes finished action is called a past or perfect participle; as, heard, written.

The present participle and the participial infinitive have the same form, but the participle is partly verb and partly adjective, while the infinitive is partly verb and partly noun. The verbal noun derived from the verb, and the participial adjective, also end in ing; as,—

- I. He hears his daughter's voice, singing [Participle] in the village choir. LONGFELLOW.
  - 2. They spent the evening in singing [Infinitive] carols.
- 3. The time of the singing [Noun] of birds has come.

  -BIBLE.
  - 4. A singing [Adjective] bird on every bough. Howitt.

The verbal noun may be distinguished from the participial infinitive by taking an article before it, and by not being followed by an object. The participial adjective may be distinguished from the participle, by expressing not action but quality, and by not taking an object.

### EXERCISE I.

Select the participles in the following sentences, mention the kind, and tell what each modifies:—

I. I heard my own mountain goats bleating aloft. -

into

of l

leav upoi

near bask rush lay

keep

10

pre.

past

is called implies djective, ive verb

sent or

ast or

ie same hile the ed from

ple] in

s. come.

VITT.

infiniby an ne paring an

on the

oft. -

- Toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing,
   Onward through life he goes. Longfellow.
- 3. The passengers, warned by the helmsman, retreated into the cabin. Lossing.
- 4. While I lay musing on my pillow, I heard the sound of little feet pattering outside of the door.—IRVING.
  - 5. All precious things, discovered late,

    To those that seek them issue forth.—Tennyson.
- 6. Heaped in the hollows of the grove, the withered leaves lie dead. BRYANT.
- 7. Looking out of the window, I saw a crow perched upon the edge of the nest.—Burroughs.
- 8. Yonder sat a tailor cross-legged, making a waistcoat; near him, stretched on his face at full length, sprawled a basket-maker with his half-woven basket and bundles of rushes beside him; and here, close against the main entrance, lay a blind man and his dog; the master asleep, the dog keeping watch.—Amelia B. Edwards.
  - 9. Watching their leader's beck and will,
    All silent there they stood, and still.—Scort.
  - 10. Truth, crushed to earth, shall rise again. BRYANT.

### EXERCISE II.

- 1. Copy from any standard writer six sentences containing present participles. Underline the participles.
- 2. Copy from any standard writer six sentences containing past participles.

### EXERCISE III.

Distinguish between the different forms of the verb in ing in the following sentences, and tell how each is used:—

- 1. The darting swallows soar and sing.
- 2. After standing a long time at the end of the wharf, gazing seaward, the strangers began to stray into the town.
  - 3. Coming back we met two or three more regiments.
- 4. I had now given up all expectation of finding the road.
- 5. One could wander for miles through this forest without meeting a person, or hearing a sound, other than the occasional chatter of a squirrel, the song of a bird, or the sighing of the wind through the branches overhead.
  - 6. Hark! from the murmuring clods I hear Glad voices of the coming year.—BRYANT.
- 7. There's a merry brown thrush sitting up in a tree. Lucy Larcom.
  - 8. But sorrow returned with the dawning of morn,
    . And the voice in my dreaming ear melted away.

- CAMPBELL.

### EXERCISE IV.

Write sentences containing a form of the verb in ing used—

- I. As an infinitive.
- 2. As a participle.
- 3. As a noun.
- 4. As an adjective.

T men

T called Si there

A I hee

A I he

> A shall Be

tens A

in th

some

### LESSON XLVI.

### TENSE.

Tell what time each verb expresses in the following sentences, and mention the different forms of the verb:—

- 1. I see the light.
- 2. I saw the light.
- 3. I shall see the light.

The form of the verb that expresses the time of the action is called tense.

Since there are three divisions of time—present, past, and future, there are three leading tenses—present, past, and future.

A verb that denotes present time is in the present tense; as, I hear.

A verb that denotes past time is in the past tense; as, I heard.

A verb that denotes future time is in the future tense; as, I shall hear.

Besides these three leading tenses, there are three perfect tenses, which denote action as finished or completed.

A verb that denotes an action as completed at the *present* time is in the present perfect tense; as,—

I have heard the speaker. He has finished the work.

A verb that denotes an action as having been completed before some past time is in the past perfect or pluperfect tense; as,—

wharf, town.

in ing

nts. ng the

t withan the or the

tree.

y. MPBELL.

r ing

## He had heard the report.

A verb that denotes an action to be completed before some future time is in the future perfect tense; as,—

I shall have heard the lecture. He will have heard the lecture.

### FORMATION OF TENSES.

hav

bea

1

kno

the

usec

1

Tell which tenses are indicated by the form of the verb itself, and which are made by the aid of other verbs:—

### TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT. I write.

PAST. I wrote.

PAST PERFECT. I have written.

PAST PERFECT. I had written.

FUTURE. I shall write.

FUTURE PERFECT. I shall have written.

Only two tenses, the present and the past, are indicated by the form of the verb itself. The other tenses are expressed by the aid of other verbs, called auxiliary verbs.

The future tense is made up of the verb shall or will and the simple infinitive of the verb expressing the action.

Shall is used in the first person, and will in the second and third persons, to announce future action. (See Lesson XL.)

The present-perfect tense is made up of the present of the auxiliary verb have and the perfect par siple of the principal verb.

The past-perfect tense is made up of the past of the auxiliary verb have and the perfect participle of the principal verb.

The future-perfect tense is made up of the auxiliary shall or will and the perfect infinitive of the verb expressing the action.

### EXERCISE I.

Mention the verbs in the following sentences, and name the tense of each: —

- 1. We started late in the afternoon of the first day.
- 2. There is a land of pure delight.
- 3. I had now come in sight of the house.
- 4. A ship-of-war arrived unexpectedly in the bay.
- 5. The walls of this most curious and interesting fortress have probably lost much of their original height.
  - 6. Over the sea our galleys went.
  - 7. The moon had risen, but the breeze had dropped.
- 8. A cuckoo's nest is a very simple affair, but it will hear close study. M. Thompson.
  - 9. Short space he stood, then waved his hand: Down sunk the disappearing band. Scorr.
- 10. It is a strange thing how little in general people know about the sky. Ruskin.
- 11. Other soldiers heard the noise, and ran hastily from the barracks to assist their comrades. HAWTHORNE.
  - A rainbow in the sky:

    So was it when my life began;
    So is it now I am a man.—Wordsworth.

#### EXERCISE II.

Write six tense forms for each of the following verbs, to be used with the subject 1:—

find, break, come, drive, forget, give, know, see, draw, sell.

elf, and

e future

ritten.

by the

nd the

sons, to

e aux-

ıxiliary

or will

## LESSON XLVII.

### PERSON AND NUMBER.

Tell how many forms of the verb hear are used with the different subjects in the following, and give the endings of the special forms:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First Person.	I hear.	We hear.
Second Person.	Thou hearest.	You hear.
Third Person.	He hears.	They hear

The different forms that a verb takes to correspond to the person and the number of its subject are called person and number forms.

The second person singular has the ending est or st in both the present and past tenses of the indicative mode; as,—

Present. Thou plantest; thou seest. Past. Thou plantedst; thou sawst.

The third person singular has, in the present indicative, the ending s or es and the old forms eth or th; as,—

She sleeps or she sleepeth. He does or he doth or he doeth.

PR

gave

The forms with thou and the forms in th or eth are now seldom used, except in prayer and in poetry.

With the exception of the verb be, the first person singular and the plural forms for all the persons have no endings to mark person or number.

The verb be has different forms for the singular and the plural in the present and past tenses of the indicative mode; as,—

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

I am.

We, you, or they are.

I was.

We, you, or they were.

### EXERCISE.

Write the forms of the following verbs required for the subjects I, thou, he, and we, in the indicative present:—

draw,	hear,	move,	speak,	sing,
see,	stand,	choose,	lift,	come,
find,	forget,	know,	take,	stand.

### LESSON XLVIII.

### FORMS OF VERBS.

Tell how the past tenses of the following verbs are formed:-

PRESENT.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	PRESENT.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
plant,	planted,	planted.	fall,	fell,	fallen.
look,	looked,	looked.	throw,	threw,	thrown.
live,	lived,	lived.	give,	gave,	given.

A verb that forms its past tense by adding ed or d to the present is a regular verb; as, walk, walked; move, moved.

A verb that does not form its past tense by adding ed or d to the present is an irregular verb; as, drive, drove; give, gave.

e perimber

differ-

special

th the

end-

eldom

r and erson

al in

Some verbs have both regular and irregular forms; as, build, builded or built; kneel, kneeled or knelt.

The present tense, the past tense, and the perfect participle are called the **principal parts** of a verb, since all the other parts can be found when these three parts are known.

A verb that lacks any of the principal parts is called defective; as, may, shall.

## AIPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRESENT.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	PRESEN	T. PAST.	PERF. PART.
abide,	abode,	abode.	blow,	blew,	blown.
arise,	arose,	arisen.	break,	broke,	broken.
awake,	( awoke,	awoke.	breed,	bred,	bred.
	l awaked,	awaked.	bring,	brought,	brought.
bear	bore.	born.	build,	builded,	builded.
[to bring forth],	)	20111.	bund,	l built,	built.
bear	bore,	torne.	burn,	∫ burned,	burned.
[to carry],	)	201110,	Juin,	l burnt,	burnt.
beat,	beat,	beaten.	burst,	burst,	burst.
begin,	began,	begun.	buy,	bought,	bought.
behold,	beheld,	{ beholden.	cast,	cast,	cast.
	,	beheld.	catch,	caught,	caught.
bend,	bent,	bended.	chide,	chid,	∫ chidden.
		bent.	,		chid.
bereave,	<	l, bereaved.	choose,	chose,	chosen.
•	bereft,	bereft.	cleave	{ clove,	cloven.
beseech,		t, besought.	[to split],	cleft,	cleft.
bid,	bade,	bidden.	cling,	clung,	clung.
, , ,	bid,	bid.	clothe,	{ clothed,	clothed.
bind,	bound,	bound.	,	clad,	clad.
bite,	bit,	bitten.	come,	came,	come.
		bit.	cost,	cost,	cost.

l, builded
ciple are parts can
fective;
F. PART.
lown. roken.
roken. ed. ought.
ought. iilded.
ıilt. ırned.
ırnt.
ırst. ught.
st.
ught. idden.
id.
osen. oven.
ft.
ing. thed.
d.
ne.

PRESENT	PAST.	PERF. PART.	PRESENT.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
creep,	crept,	crept.	gird,	girt,	girt.
cut,	cut,	cut.	give,	gave,	given.
deal,	dealt,	dealt.	go,	went,	gone.
dig,	J dug,	dug.	grind,	ground,	~
uig,	digged,	digged.	grow,	grew,	grown.
do,	did,	done.	hang,	hung,	hung.
draw,	drew,	drawn.	nang,	hanged,	hanged.
dream,	dreamed,	dreamed.	have,	had,	had.
arcan,	dreamt,	dreamt.	hear,	heard,	heard.
drink,	drank,	drunken. drunk.	heave,	hove, heaved,	heaved.
drive,	drove,	driven.	hide,	hid,	s hidden.
dwell,	dwelled,	dwelled.	mac,	ma,	l hid.
	dwelt,	dwelt.	hit,	hit,	hit.
eat,	ate,	eaten.	hold,	held,	held.
fall,	fell,	fallen.	hurt,	hurt,	hurt.
feed,	fed,	fed.	keep,	kept,	kept.
feel,	felt,	felt.	kneel,	kneeled	•
fight,	fought,	fought.		knelt,	knelt.
find,	found,	found.	knit,	knit,	knit.
flee,	fled,	fled.	know,	knew,	known.
fling,	flung,	flung.	lay,	laid,	laid.
fly,	flew,	flown.	lead,	led,	led.
forbear,	forbore,	forborne.	lean,	leaned,	leaned.
forget,	forgot,	forgotten.		leant,	leant.
forsake,	forsook,	forsaken.	leap,	leaped,	leaped.
freeze,	froze,	frozen.		l leapt,	leapt.
get,	got,	gotten. got.	learn,	learned, learnt,	learned, learnt.
gild,	gilded,	gilded.	leave,	left,	left.
<i>6</i> ,	gilt,	gilt.	lend,	lent,	lent.

PRESENT.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	PRESENT.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
let, lie,	let, lav.	let. lain.	lose, make,	lost, made,	lost.
light,	ighted,		mean,	meant,	made. meant.
	Clit,	lit.	meet,	met,	met.

PR

pa

pa

pe

pu

qu

rea

rer rid rin

rise

rur

say see

see sell sen set sha she shi

### EXERCISE I.

Make a list of verbs which have different forms for the present tense, the past tense, and the perfect participle.

### EXERCISE II.

Make a list of verbs which have the same form for the past tense and the perfect participle.

### EXERCISE III.

Make a list of verbs which have two different forms for either the past tense or the past participle, or for both.

### EXERCISE IV.

Write the principal parts of the following verbs: -

beat, blow, choose, forget, freeze, give, lie, drink, bring, eat, begin, break, cleave, come, lay,	do, hold, let, flee, hang,	fly, know, hide, grow, get.
--	--	---

## PART.

t.

ide. ant.

t.

resent

past

for

y,
now,
ide,
row,
et.

## LESSON XLIX.

## FORMS OF VERBS. - Continued.

PRESENT	. PAST.	PERF. PART.	PRESENT.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
pass,	passed,	{ passed. · { past.	shoe,	shod, shot,	shod. shot.
pay, pen,	paid, penned,	paid. penned.	show,	showed,	showed.
put,	put, quitted,	pent. put.	shred, shrink,	shred, shrank,	
quit, read,	quitted, quit, read,	quitted. quit. read.	shut,	shrunk,	shut.
rend, ride,	rent,	rent.	sing, sink,	sang, sank,	sung. sunken. sunk.
ring, rise,	rang,	rung.	sit, slay,	sat, slew,	sat.
run, say,	ran, said,	run. said.	sleep,	slept,	slept.
see, seek,	saw,	seen. sought.	slide, sling,	slid, slung,	slung.
seethe,	sod, seethed,	sodden. seethed,	slink, slit,	slunk, slit,	slunk. slit.
sell, send,	sold, sent,	sold. sent.	smell,	smelled,	smelled.
set,	set,	set.	smite,	smote,	smitten.
shake, shed,	shook, shed,	shaken. shed.	sow,	sowed,	sown. sowed.
shine,	shone,	shone.	speak,	spoke,	spoken.

PRESEN'	r. Past.	PERF. PART.	PRESE	NT. PAST.	DEDE DATE
speed,	sped,	sped.	take,	took,	PERF. PART. taken.
spell,	∫ spelled,		teach,	taught,	taken. taught.
spend, spill, spin, spread, spring, stand,	spent, spilt, spun, spread, sprang,	spelt. spent. spilt. spun. spread. sprung.	tear, tell, think, thrive, throw,	tore, told, thought, throve, thrived, threw,	torn. told.
stand,	stood,	stood.	thrust,	thrust,	thrust.
sting,	stole, stung,	stolen. stung.	tread	trod,	trodden.
strew,	strewed,	strewn. strewed.	wake,	{ woke, } waked, }	waked.
stride,	strode,	stridden.	wear,	wore,	worn.
strike,	struck,	stricken.	weave,	wove,	woven.
string, strive,	strung, strove,	strung.	weep,	wept, wet,	wept. wet.
swear,	swore,	striven. sworn.	win, wind,	won, wound,	won. wound.
sweat, sweep, swim, swing,	sweat, swept, swam, swung,	sweat. swept. swum.	work, wring, write,	wrought, worked, wrung,	wrought. worked. wrung.
	-	0.		wrote,	written.

form

W

Co which to exp

## EXERCISE I.

Make a list of irregular verbs which change their form for the past tense and the perfect participle.

# . PART.

ken. ught.

rn. ld.

ought. riven. rived.

rown.

ust. dden.

d. ked.

n. ⁄en.

en. ot.

nd. ugh**t**. ked.

ng. ten.

r the

### EXERCISE II.

Make a list of irregular verbs which have the same form for the present tense, the past tense, and the perfect participle.

### EXERCISE III.

Make a list of verbs which have both regular and irregular forms.

#### EXERCISE IV.

Write the principal parts of the following verbs: -

burn,	creep,	flee,	hear,	lay,
let,	read,	set,	show,	sweep,
cost,	have,	lead,	pay,	say,
sell,	shoe,	sleep,	shut,	speed.

## LESSON L.

### AUXILIARY VERBS.

Compare the italicized verbs in the following sentences, and tell which express their own proper meanings and which help other verbs to express their meanings:—

- 1. Trees have roots.
- 2. The leaves have fallen.
- 3. It was an ancient mariner.
- 4. How cheerfully the week was spent!

Verbs that are used to help or complete the conjugation of other verbs, are said to be used as auxiliaries, and are then called auxiliary verbs; as,—

The rain had ceased.

### EXERCISE 1.

Point out the verbs in the following sentences, and show which are used as auxiliary verbs:—

- 1. The days are cold, the nights are long.
- 2. The sower's task is done. BRYANT.
- 3. Some of the men had no muskets, and almost all were without bayonets.—HAWTHORNE.
  - 4. Last night the moon had a golden ring.
- 5. I have had playmates: I have had companions. Charles Lamb.
  - 6. By fairy hands their knell is rung.—Collins.
  - 7. There was a sound of revelry by night.—Byron.
  - 8. The shades of night were falling fast. -- Longfellow.
  - 9. They know not what they do.
  - 10. He did receive the message.
  - 11. His face did shine as the sun.
  - 12. I shall not look upon his like again.
- 13. If I will that he tarry till I come, what is that to thee?—BIBLE.
  - 14. He will not do the work.
  - 15. Who trusts the strength will with the burden grow.
  - 16. The mountain and the squirrel Had a quarrel.

"RE

with

voic

1. I l

2. Tl

3. H

Sin I. (If

2. (If

3. (If

h

jugation of l are then

and show

lmost all

anions. —

N. LLOW,

that to

n grow.

The verbs have, do, shall, will, and be are used as auxiliary verbs with the participles or infinitives of other verbs to form tense and voice. They have the following forms:—

## I. - The Verb Have.

"RESENT TENSE.

PAST TENSE.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Have. Had.

ad. Had.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESEN	T TENSE.	PAST	TENSE.
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR,	PLURAL.
1. I have,	1. We have,	1. I had,	I. We had,
2. Thou hast,	2. You have,	2. Thou hadst	
3. He has.	3. They have.	3. He had.	3. They had

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.		PAST TENSE.	
SINGULAR. I. (If) I have, 2. (If) thou have,	PLURAL.  I. (If) we have,  2. (If) you have,	SINGULAR.  I. (If) I had,  2. (If) thou  had.	PLURAL.  I. (If) we had,  2. (If) you had,
3. (If) he have.	3. (If) they have.	3. (If) he had.	3. (If) they had.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

SINGULAR.	PLU	JRAL.
Have (thou).	Have (ye or you).	
INFINITIVES.	PARTICIPLES.	
(To) have,		Having.
Having.	Perfect.	_

The verb have is used as auxiliary with the perfect participle of a verb, to form the perfect tenses, each part of have forming the corresponding perfect; as,—

Present Perfect. I have seen. Past Perfect. I had seen.

Future Perfect. I shall have seen.

Perfect Infinitives. (To) have seen; having seen.

Perfect Participle. Having seen.

When have expresses possession it is an independent verb; as,—Birds of the air have nests.

## EXERCISE II.

Tell whether the verb have in the following sentences is an independent verb or an auxiliary verb, giving a reason in each case:—

- I. If you have tears, prepare to shed them now.—Shakespeare.
- 2. Have then thy wish: he whistled shrill,
  And he was answered from the hill. Scorr.
- 3. Yes: he had lived to shame me from my sneer. TAVLOR.
- 4. The sun had scarcely risen, when the messenger arrived.
- 5. Greatly begin! though thou have time But for a line, be that sublime. LOWELL.
- 6. The things which I have seen I now can see no more.
- 7. The fondness for rural life among the higher classes of the English, has had a great and salutary effect upon the national character.—IRVING.

the abest. -

Th auxilia

> I. 2.

3. Wh indepe

Tel

an au:

I. 2.

3.

4. 5.

6.

*7*⋅ 8.

birds a

9. 10. ciple of a the *corre*-

en.

b; as, —

es is an ason in

KESPEARE.

-Taylor. arrived.

more.
classes
on the

8. Of all the poets who have introduced into their works the agency of supernatural beings, Milton has succeeded best. — MACAULAY.

## II. - The Verb Do.

The present and past tenses of the verb do are used as auxiliaries with the simple infinitive—

- I. To express emphasis; as, How he did shake!
- 2. To express negation; as, I did not see it.
- 3. To ask a question; as, Did you hear the motion?

When do is used with the meaning to perform, it is an independent verb; as, He did the work quickly.

### EXERCISE III.

Tell whether the verb do is used as an independent or as an auxiliary verb in the following examples, and explain the use of the auxiliaries:—

- I. The evil that men do lives after them. Shakespeare.
- 2. You all did mark how he did shake. Shakespeare.
- 3. She gave me of the tree, and I did eat. BIBLE.
- 4. You all do know this mantle. Shakespeare.
- 5. I do not like your faults. Shakespeare.
- 6. Accuse not nature: she hath done her part:
  Do thou but thine.—MILTON.
- 7. Do not dissipate your energies on trifles. Hamilton.
- 8. Most of the facts of nature, especially in the life of birds and animals, are well screened. We do not see the play because we do not look intently enough.—John Burroughs.
  - 9. Did ye not hear it? Byron.
  - 10. A merry heart doeth good like a medicine.

PRESENT TENSE.

## LESSON LI.

### AUXILIARY VERBS. - Continued.

### III. - Shall.

PAST TENSE.

Sho

Showill o

sentend

1. 2. tation
3. 4. Shakese
5. 1

6.

7. ]

8. 4

not fa

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
	1. We shall,	The second secon	•	
2. Thou shalt,	2. Ye or you shall,	2. Thou shouldst,	should,	
3. He shall.	3. They shall.	3. He should.	3. They should.	
IV.—Will.				
PRESENT	TENSE.	PAST T	ENSE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
1. I will,	I. We will,	1. I would,	1. We would,	
2. Thou wilt,	2. Ye <i>or</i> you will,	2. Thou wouldst,	2. Ye or you would,	
3. He will.	3. They will.	3. He would.	3. They would.	
Shall and will are used with the infinitive of a verb, to form the future tense. Shall is an auxiliary of the future in the first person, and will in the second and third persons; as,—				
I shall pass the house this afternoon.				

To make a promise or to express the determination of the speaker, will is used in the first person and shall in the second and third persons; as,—

You will be too late.

He will bring the papers.

I will do the errand.
I will have my bond.
You shall not escape.
He shall receive the reward.

Shall is used in asking questions in the first person; as,-

Shall I ring the bell? (The action is dependent on the will of the person addressed.)

Should and would, in corresponding cases, are used in the same manner as shall and will; thus,—

I shall return the book, or I should return the book. You will find the tree, or you would find the tree.

### EXERCISE I.

Explain each use of shall and of will in the following sentences:—

- I. To-day the vessel shall be launched. Longfellow.
- 2. Take care of your spirit and conduct, and your reputation will take care of itself. HAMILTON.
  - 3. You will compel me then to read the will. SHAKESPEARE.
- 4. Shall I descend? And will you give me leave? -- Shakespeare.
  - 5. Hear me, for I will speak. SHAKESPEARE.
  - 6. Will you be patient? Will you stay awhile? SHAKESPEARE.
- 7. If we fail, it can be no worse for us. But we shall not fail. The cause will raise up armies: the cause will create navies. Webster,
  - 8. All that breathe will share thy destiny. BRYANT.
  - 9. Choose ye this day whom ye will serve.

urat.
should,
or you
nould,
y should.

would,
or you
uld,
y would.

form the t person,

speaker, nd third

#### EXERCISE II.

- (1) Copy the following sentences, filling the blanks with a form of shall or will. (2) State a reason for the use of each word inserted:—
  - I. We go if it does not rain.
  - 2. you have hot or cold tea?
  - 3. The work probably be finished to-night.
- 4. Whither thou goest, I —— go; and where thou lodgest, I —— lodge.—BIBLE.
  - 5. I —— lift up mine eyes unto the hills.—BIBLE.
  - 6. I find you at home?
  - 7. He said he not accept the explanation.
  - 8. I be pleased to hear from you.

## LESSON LII.

## AUXILIARY VERBS. - Continued.

V. - The Verb Be.

The verb be has the following forms:--

### INDICATIVE MODE.

### PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

I. I am,
2. Thou art,
3. He is.

PLURAL.

I. We are,
2. You are,
3. They are.

I.

pass

#### PAST TENSE

	- 1101	# #114 (5 #2)	
	Singular.		PLURAL.
<b>1.</b> ]	I was,	I.	We were,
2.	Γhou wast (wert),	2.	You were,
<b>3</b> . ]	He was.	3.	They were

e of each

re thou

	PRESENT	TENSE.	
	Singular.	Plural.	
I.	(If) I be,	I. (If) we be,	
2.	(If) thou be,	2. (If) you be,	
3∙	(If) he be.	3. (If) they be.	
	PAST T	TENSE.	
	Singular.	Plural.	
I.	(If) I were,	I. (If) we were,	
2.	(If) thou wert,	2. (If) you were,	
3.	(If) he were.	3. (If) they were.	
	IMPERATIV	E MODE.	
	SINGULAR.	Plural.	
Be (thou).		Be (ye or you).	

De (thou).	Be (ye	or you)
INFINITIVES.	PARTIC	PLES.
(To) be.	Present.	Being.
Being.	Perfect.	Been.

The different forms of the verb be are used as auxiliary —

1. With the perfect participle of a transitive verb to make the passive voice; as,—

I am seen,
I was seen,
I shall be seen.
I have been seen,
I shall have been seen.

2. With the present participle of a verb, to make the progressive form. The progressive form represents an action as continuing or progressing; as,—

I am reading,
I was reading,
I shall be reading.
I have been reading,
I shall have been reading.

When not thus used with the participle of another verb, be is an independent verb. It may then—

- 1. Express existence; as, God is.
- 2. Be used as a copula, connecting its subject to a word or words describing the subject; as, Life is real.

#### EXERCISE I.

Explain the use of the verb be in each of the following examples: —

- I. Life is real! Life is earnest! Longfellow.
- 2. I have been a stranger in a strange land.
- 3. The harp, his sole remaining joy, Was carried by an orphan boy.—Scott.
- 4. The Mayor was dumb, and the council stood As if they were changed into blocks of wood.

yar

hav

- 5. If money had been needed before, it was still more needed now.
  - 6. This was accomplished in less than an hour's time.
  - 7. The shades of night were falling fast. Longfellow.
  - 8. Old Kaspar's work was done,
    And he before his cottage door
    Was sitting in the sun. Southey.
  - 9. While we were talking, a third messenger arrived.
  - 10. Somewhere the birds are singing evermore.
  - II. O sweet and strange it seems to me, that ere this day is done,

The voice, that now is speaking, may be beyond the sun.—Tennyson.

- 12. The city was destroyed by an earthquake.
- 13. The great iron gateway that opened into the court-yard was locked. IRVING.
  - 14. Whatever is, is right. POPE.
  - 15. The old stage-coach is at the door.
  - 16. I stood on the bridge at midnight, As the clocks were striking the hour.

### EXERCISE II.

Copy from the sentences in this lesson (1) all verbs that have the passive form, and (2) all verbs that have the progressive form, and explain the formation and the use of each.

rogresas con-

*se* is an

ling.

vord or

lowing

### EXERCISE III.

1. Write five sentences, each containing the verb be used as an independent verb.

I.

2.

3.

and

an

- 2. Write five sentences, each containing a verb in the passive voice.
- 3. Write five sentences, each containing a verb in the progressive form.

## LESSON LIII.

### AUXILIARY VERBS. - Continued.

The following verbs are used with the simple infinitive to express power, permission, possibility, necessity, etc. They are sometimes called auxiliaries of mode:—

## I. - Can.

PRESENT	TENSE.	PAST TENSE.	
Singular.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. I can,	1. We can,	1. I could,	1. We could,
2. Thou canst,	2. Ye or you	2. Thou couldst,	2. Ye or you
	can,		could,
3. He can.	3. They can.	3. He could.	3. They could.

Can is used to express power or ability; as: -

She can walk.

He could speak readily in three or four languages.

## II. - May.

#### PRESENT TENSE. PAST TENSE. SINGULAR. PLURAL. SINGULAR. PLURAL. I. I may, 1. We may, 1. We might, I. I might, 2. Thou mayest, 2. Ye or you 2. Thou might- 2. Ye or you est. may, might, 3. He may. 3. They may. 3. He might. 3. They might.

May expresses permission or possibility; as, -

You may [are permitted to] enter the room. He may [it is possible that he will] change his mind.

May is also used to express purpose, or to express a wish; as,—
Open the gate that they may enter.

Open the gate that they may enter.

May you be happy.

Could and might are sometimes used as the simple past of can and may, and sometimes in a conditional sense; as,—

I could hear the music.

The lights of the village *might* be seen from the bay. He *might* go if he *could* spare the time.

## III. - Must.

Must has no change of form. It expresses necessity; as,—
He must have rest.

## IV. - Should and Would.

Should is no longer used as a simple past, but has the sense of an indefinite present or of a contingent condition; as,—

express netimes

ised as

passive

he pro-

AL.
ould,
or you
ld,
could.

es.

Ambition should be made of sterner stuff.

If I should begin the work, I could not finish it.

Would is sometimes a simple past, sometimes a contingent present; as,—

He would not speak when he had the opportunity. He would not speak if he had the opportunity.

The phrases made up of the verbs may, can, must, might, could, would, or should, with an infinitive, are classed together by some grammarians, and called the potential mode; thus,—

Present Tense. I may, can, or must go.

Present Perfect Tense. I may have, can have, or must have gone.

Past Tense. I might, could, would, or should go.

Past Perfect Tense. I might have, could have, would have, or should have gone.

## V. - Ought.

Ought is the old past tense of the verb owe, and expresses duty or obligation. It is used with the present infinitive to indicate present time, and with the perfect infinitive to indicate past time; as,—

Present. He ought to go.

Past. He ought to have gone.

#### EXERCISE I.

Tell how the verbs may, can, must, should and would are used in the following sentences:—

I. Lives of great men all remind us

We can make our lives sublime, — Longfellow,

hun

leap cour

I

ı reac

1:

l mig

- 2. For men may come and men may go,
  But I go on forever. TENNYSON.
- 3. He that fights and runs away, May live to fight another day.
- 4. It may be the gulfs will wash us down:
  It may be we shall touch the Happy Isles.
- 5. Wealth may seek us, but wisdom must be sought.
- 6. It is not what a lawyer tells me I may do, but what humanity, reason, and justice tell me I ought to do. BURKE.
  - 7. They had been friends in youth,
    But whispering tongues can poison truth.
  - 8. Too late! too late! ye cannot enter now. Tennyson.
- 9. How he could trot! how he could run! and then such leaps as he could take—there was not a hedge in the whole country that he could not clear.—IRVING.
  - 10. She must weep or she will die. Tennyson.
- 11. He saw that it would be dark long before he could reach the village. IRVING.
  - If a storm should come and awake the deep,
    What matter! I shall ride and sleep.—PROCTER.

#### EXERCISE II.

Write sentences containing the verbs may, can, must, might, could, should, and would,

tingent

ould, or

should

duty resent

d are

# LESSON LIV.

# CONJUGATION OF THE VERB DRIVE.

To conjugate a verb is to give its different forms; thus, -

# I. - ACTIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MODE.

### PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.			PLURAL.
I. I drive,	1	I.	We drive,
2. Thou drivest,		2.	You drive,
3. He drives.		3.	They drive.

#### PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

PRESENT	PERFECT TENSE.
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. I have driven,	I. We have driven,
2. Thou hast driven,	2. You have driven,
3. He has driven.	3. They have driven.

#### PAST TENSE.

SINGULAR.	Plural.		
1. I drove,	I. We drove,		
2. Thou drovest,	2. You drove,		
3. He drove.	3. They drove.		

#### PAST PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I had driven,	1. We had driven,
2. Thou hadst driven,	2. You had driven,
3. He had driven.	3. They had driven

#### FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- I. I shall drive,
- I. We shall drive,
- 2 Thou wilt drive, 2. You will drive,
- 3. He will drive.

thus, -

3. They will drive.

#### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- I. I shall have driven, I. We shall have driven,
- Thou wilt have driven,
   You will have driven,
   They will have driven.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. (If) I drive,

- 1. (If) we drive,
- 2. (If) thou drive,
- 2. (If) you drive,
- 3. (If) he drive.
- 3. (If) they drive.

#### PAST TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- I. (If) I drove,
- 1. (If) we drove,
- 2. (If) thou drove,
- 2. (If) you drove,
- 3. (If) he drove.
- 3. (If) they drove.

#### IMPERATIVE MODE.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Drive (thou).

Drive (ye or you).

### INFINITIVES.

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

(To) drive, Driving.

(To) have driven. Having driven.

> Th partic

> > I a

I

Is

(If)

To

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PRESENT PERFECT.

Driving.

Having driven.

# II. - PASSIVE FORMS.

The passive forms of a transitive verb are made by joining its perfect participle to the different forms of the verb be; thus,—

### INDICATIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Present Perfect Tense.

I am driven.

I have been driven.

Past Tense.

Past Perfect Tense.

I was driven.

I had been driven.

Future Tense.

Future Perfect Tense.

I shall be driven.

I shall have been driven.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Past Tense.

(If) I be driven.

(If) I were driven.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Be (thou) driven.

### INFINITIVES.

Present.

Perfect.

(To) be driven, Being driven,

(To) have been driven, Having been driven,

#### PARTICIPLES.

Present. Being driven.

ven.

ning its

iven.

Perfect. Driven.

Present Perfect.
Having been driven.

# III. - PROGRESSIVE FORMS.

The progressive forms of a verb are made by joining its present participle to the different forms of the verb be; thus,—

### INDICATIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Present Perfect Tense.

I am driving.

I have been driving.

Past Tense.

Past Perfect Tense.

I was driving.

I had been driving.

Future Tense.

Future Perfect Tense.

I shall be driving.

I shall have been driving.

# SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Past Tense.

(If) I be driving.

(If) I were driving.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Be (thou) driving.

#### INFINITIVES.

Present.

Perfect.

To (be) driving.

(To) have been driving. Having been driving.

### PARTICIPLES.

Present.

Present Perfect.

Driving,

Having been driving.

### EXERCISE I.

Write the active forms of the verb see that are used with the subject I in the different modes and tenses.

### EXERCISE II.

Write the passive forms of the verb see that are used with the subject thou in the different modes and tenses.

### EXERCISE III.

Write the progressive forms of the verb write that are used with the subject he in the different modes and tenses,

of le

Wł senter

# LESSON LV.

# LAY AND LIE.

- 1. Lay the books on the table.
- 2. Lie on the lounge.
- 3. The rugs lie on the floor

Give the meanings of the words in Italics. Which word means to place in position? Which word means to take a reclining position, or to occupy a fixed place?

What is the past form of lay? What form of lay should be used with have and had?

What is the past form of lie? What form of lie should be used with have and had?

### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

T

Change these sentences, making the verbs express past time;

- with the
- with the

re used

eans to

tion, or

ed with

d with

ie;

1. I lay the key on the desk.

2. The soldiers lie down at night.

3. The cat lies by the fire.

4. The men arc laying a new walk.

5. They lay the stones with great care.

6. The cows are lying in the shade.

H

Copy the following sentences, filling the blanks with some form of lay or lie:

- I. the music on the piano.
- 2. The rain has the dust.
- 3. He down to rest.
- 4. He has there an hour.
- 5. She the letter on the desk.
- 6. The dog was by the fire.
- The gentle race of flowers
   Are in their lowly beds, with the fair and good of ours.
- 8. In the cold moist earth we —— her, when the forests cast the leaf.

# LESSON LVI.

# SIT AND SET.

- 1. Sit down and rest.
- 2. Set the chair by the window.

What is the meaning of sit in the first sentence? Of set in the second sentence?

- 1. I sat in this seat last night.
- 2. The hen is sitting on twelve eggs.
- He had sat under that tree for an hour.

What form of sit expresses a past action? What form is used with are? What form is used with had?

- 1. He set out two trees yesterday.
- The men are setting fence-posts.
- The doctor has set the boy's arm.

What does set mean in the first sentence? What time does it express? What form of set is used with are? What form is used with

# WRITTEN EXERCISES.

Copy the following sentences, filling the blanks with some form of sit or set: -

- 1. Howard is —— out strawberry plants.
- 2. Will you --- by me?
- 3. the cup on the shelf.
- 4. Five little birds were —— in a row.
- 5. Who --- the table?
- 6. He in the front seat.
- 7. They by the pond, watching the gold-fish.
- 8. He —— down to rest before we reached the end of our journey.

II.

Write sentences containing the past tenses of the verbs -

sit,

set.

lie,

#### III.

Write sentences showing the correct use of the following verbs:—

are sitting, has lain, were laid,

had set, is lying, were laying,

was set, have sat, was setting.

# LESSON LVII.

## MAY AND CAN.

- 1. May I go home?
- 2. Can Ralph sail a boat?

What is asked in the first sentence? What in the second sentence? What word is used to express permission? What word expresses the power of doing?

### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Copy the following sentences, filling the blanks with some form of may, or can:—

- I. Mabel not sing.
- 2. He --- speak French fluently.
- 3. We not hear the speaker.
- 4. Frances have the blue book.
- 5. Who —— understand his errors?
- 6. Howard teach the boys a new game.
- 7. You —— look at the drawings.
- 8. We ---- learn to sketch from nature.
- 9. I look at your watch?
- 10. you hear the watch tick?

hour. is used with

does it exs used with

with some

d of our

# LESSON LVIII.

# THINK; GUESS; EXPECT.

- 1. I think they will come.
- 2. I could not guess the riddle.
- 3. I expect a letter to-morrow.

What word is used in the first sentence, to express an opinion? What does the speaker say in the second sentence? What do you do when you guess a riddle?

When does the speaker say he expects a letter? Would it be right to say, "I expect a letter yesterday"? Why not?

Expect refers to future action.

Do not use guess or expect when you mean think.

### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

N

R

print

the o

I.

Copy the following sentences, filling the blanks with some form of think, yuess, or expect: —

- 1. I will about the matter.
- 2. I to start on the morning train.
- 3. how much this hat cost.
- 4. I the tickets are all sold.
- 5. They to build a new house in the spring.
- 6. I the train will stop.
- 7. I your plan is a wise one.
- 8. Paul to enter college in September.
- 9. Do you the attendance will be large?
- 10. what I have in this box.

#### H.

Write sentences, using the following verbs correctly: -

think,

guess,

expect,

learn,

teach,

on? at do you

be right

ne form

ng.

will guess,

shall expect,

will learn.

# LESSON LIX.

# STOP AND STAY.

- 1. He could not stop the horses
- 2. We shall stay in the city two weeks.

What is meant by stopping the horses? What is meant by staying in the city?

What does the word stop mean? What does the word stay mean? Read the following sentences, and give the meanings of the words printed in Italics:—

- I. Did you stop at Kingston on your way home?
- 2. Where did you stay while you were in the city?
- 3. The driver is stopping the car.
- 4. Mr. Hunt is staying at the Mountain House.
- 5. The boat will stop at the first landing.
- 6. They are staying at the hotel.
- 7. He could not stop the leak.
- 8. She will stay at home this evening.
- 9. We shall stay here a few days.
- 10. Our friends are staying in New York.

## WRITTEN EXERC SES.

Write sentences containing the following verbs: -

stop,	stayed,	are stopping,	were stonning
stay,	stonned		were stopping,
,,,	stopped,	is staying,	were staying.

II.

Write sentences showing the correct use of-

sit,	sitting,	lie,	1
set,		,	lying,
500,	setting,	lay,	laying,
may,	stopping,	•	, G
,	stopping,	can,	staying.

# LESSON LX.

# MODELS FOR PARSING VERBS, INFINITIVES, AND PARTICIPLES.

To parse a verb tell -

- 1. Its conjugation regular or irregular.
- 2. Its principal parts.
- 3. Its class transitive or intransitive.
- 4. Its voice active or passive (if transitive).
- 5. Its mode.
- 6. Its tense.
- 7. Its person and number when it has special forms.
- 8. Its subject.

ti si

bu pr jed

fall per

use don

the be, ject

E

B mode

in this

**Example 1.**—A flat stone *marks* the spot where the bard is buried.

Marks is a regular verb — mark, marked, marked. It is transitive, active voice, indicative mode, present tense, third person, singular number, agreeing with its subject stone.

Is buried is the passive form of the regular verb bury—bury, buried, buried. It is transitive, passive voice, indicative mode, present tense, third person, singular number, agreeing with its subject bard.

Example II. - The dew was falling fast.

Was falling is the progressive form of the irregular verb fall—fall, fell, fallen. It is intransitive, indicative mode, past tense, third person, singular number, agreeing with its subject dew.

Example III.— I may do that I shall be sorry for.

May is a defective verb, transitive, indicative mode, present tense, used with the subject I.\*

Do is the present infinitive of the irregular verb do—do, did, done. It is transitive, active voice, object of the verb may.

Shall be, made up of the auxiliary shall and the infinitive of the verb be, is the future tense of the verb be. It is irregular,—be, was, been,—intransitive, indicative mode, used with the subject I.

**Example IV.** -Be silent, that you may hear.

Be is an irregular verb—be, was, been,—intransitive, imperative mode, present tense, used with the subject you understood.

opping, aying.

g, ng, ing.

ND

forms.

<sup>\*</sup> Grammarians who recognize a potential mode would parse the phrase may do, in this example, as the potential, present, of the verb do.

Example V .- How he could run!

Could is a defective verb, transitive, indicative mode, past tense, used with the subject he.

Run is the present infinitive of the irregular verb run — run, ran, run. It is intransitive, object of the verb could.

Example VI .- If I should go, I could do your errand.

Could is a defective verb, transitive, subjunctive mode, past tense, used with the subject 1.

Do is the present infinitive of the irregular verb do — do, did, done. It is transitive, active voice, object of the verb could.

**Example VII.**—The greatest curiosity of the study remains to be mentioned; it was a ponderous folio volume, bound in black leather.

f

co

an

me

bei

ma

To be mentioned is the present infinitive, passive, of the transitive verb mention. It depends on the verb remains.

Bound is the perfect participle, passive, of the irregular, transitive verb bind. It modifies the noun volume.

#### EXERCISE I.

Parse the verbs in the following sentences: -

- 1. Have patience with me, and I will pay thee all.
- 2. Now stir the fire, and close the shutters fast. Cowper.
- 3. The ship is sinking beneath the tide. -- SOUTHEY.
- 4. I have been young, and now am old, yet have I not seen the righteous forsaken. BIBLE.
  - There is a tide in the affairs of men,
     Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune;

Omitted, all the voyage of their life Is bound in shallows and in miseries.

- 6. The broad sun above laughed a pitiless laugh.
- 7. The Americans were sheltered by an intervening word.
- 8. Some murmur when their sky is clear
  And wholly bright to view,
  If one small speck of dark appear
  In their great heaven of blue.—Trench.
- 9. I dreamed to-night that I did feast with Cæsar.
- 10. We had had no water since our daylight breakfast; our lunch on the mountain had been moistened only by the fog. C. D. WARNER.

#### EXERCISE II.

Parse the verbs, the infinitives, and the participles in the following sentences: —

- I. I rose softly, opened the door suddenly, and beheld one of the most beautiful little fairy groups that a painter could imagine. IRVING.
  - 2. Let us enter and pass up the staircase. HAWTHORNE.
- 3. In this way they expected to ruin all the merchants, and starve the poor people, by depriving them of employment. HAWTHORNE.
  - 4. Let me move slowly through the street. BRYANT.
- 5. The country was to be defended, and to be saved, before it could be enjoyed. Webster.
- 6. We cannot look, however imperfectly, upon a great man without gaining something by him.—Carlyle.

- run, ran,

past tense.

ınd.

oast tense,

- do, did, Z

remains *bound* in

transitive

transitive

Cowper.

I not

- In an attitude imploring,
   Hands upon his bosom crossed,
   Wondering, worshipping, adoring,
   Knelt the Monk in rapture lost. Longfellow.
- 8. The rattle of drums, beaten out of all manner of time, was heard above every other sound. HAWTHORNE.

ve

an

ma pa

an

are

Ho infi

forr

An Wh

con

verh

and

the

How

V

- 9. Whatever may be our fate, be assured that this declaration will stand. It may cost treasure, and it may cost blood; but it will stand, and it will richly compensate for both.
  - 10. You may break, you may shatter the vase, if you will, But the scent of the roses will hang round it still.
  - 11. For men must work, and women must weep, Though storms be sudden, and waters deep.
  - 12. The burden laid upon me Seemed greater than I could bear.
- 13. Modern majesty consists in work. What a man can do is his greatest ornament, and he always consults his dignity by doing it.—Carlyle.
- 14. The pine, placed nearly always among scenes disordered and desolate, brings into them all possible elements of order and precision. Lowland trees may lean to this side and that, though it is but a meadow breeze that bends them, or a bank of cowslips from which their trunks lean aslope. But let storm and avalanche do their worst, and let the pine find only a ledge of vertical precipice to cling to, it will nevertheless grow straight.—Ruskin.

## LESSON LXI.

### REVIEW OF VERBS.

Define a verb. What is a transitive verb? What is an intransitive verb? Mention a word that may be a transitive verb in one sentence, and an intransitive verb in another.

What inflections have verbs? What is meant by voice? How many voices are there? What does each denote? How is the passive voice formed?

What is meant by mode? How many modes are there? Define, and give examples of each.

What is tense? Name the three leading tenses. Which tenses are indicated by inflection and which by the aid of other verbs?

What person-forms has the verb? What number-forms?

How do the infinitive and the participle differ from the verb? How do they differ from each other? Which part of speech is the infinitive most like? The participle? Mention four different verbal forms ending in *ing*, and state the characteristics of each.

What are the principal parts of a verb? What is a regular verb? An irregular verb? When is an irregular verb said to be strong? When weak? Are regular verbs strong or weak? Which conjugation contains the oldest verbs in the language?

What is meant by conjugating a verb?

When is a verb said to be used as an auxiliary? Mention three verbs that may be used as either independent or auxiliary verbs, and give examples of each use. What auxiliary is used in forming the passive voice? Which of the auxiliaries are tense auxiliaries? How are they used?

of time,

is declast blood; oth.

you will, still.

nan can ults his

nes diselements this side ls them, aslope. let the

# LESSON LXII.

re

ac

an

th

sin

the

is c

whi

jun

rog

tives

more

T

3

### CLASSES OF ADVERBS.

Point out the adverbs in the following sentences, and tell what each expresses:—

- 1. Now came still evening on.
- 2. Ah! then and there was hurrying to and fro.
- 3. Days brightly came and calmly went.
- 4. It is a very difficult task.
- I. Adverbs may be classified according to their meaning. Thus-
- 1. Adverbs that show when or how often are called adverbs of time; as, now, then, to-day, yesterday, early, presently, soon, always, often, once, twice, daily, again.
- 2. Adverbs that show where are called adverbs of place; as, here, there, hither, thither, hence, thence, somewhere, yonder, above, below, up, down, away, off, far.

The word *there* is not always an adverb of place. Sometimes it is used merely to introduce a sentence, in order that the verb may be placed before its subject. When it is used to introduce a sentence in this manner, it is called an **expletive**; as,—

There [expletive] was a sound of revelry by night.

There [adverb of place] groups of merry children played.

- 3. Adverbs that show how are called adverbs of manner; as, well, ill, badly, slowly, quickly, clearly, together, so, thus.
- 4. Adverbs that show how much are called adverbs of degree; as, very, much, little, only, almost, enough, quite, too, so, as.
- 5. Adverbs that express certainty or uncertainty are called modal adverbs; as, indeed, verily; possibly, perhaps,

The words yes and no are sometimes called adverbs, but they are really abridged sentences; as, Will you go? Yes (= I will go).

Combinations of words used as single adverbs may be called adverbial phrases; as, again and again, at last, at length, by and by, by far, in and out, in vain, now and then, out and out, through and through, up and down.

Tell how each adverb is used in the following sentences:-

- 1. The guests withdrew silently.
- 2. The tree lies where it fell.
- 3. Where can rest be found?
- II. Adverbs may be classified, according to use, as follows: -
- 1. An adverb that simply modifies another word is called a simple adverb; as, He walked rapidly.
- 2. An adverb that not only modifies a word, but also connects the clause of which it is a part with the remainder of the sentence, is called a conjunctive adverb; as, He came when he was called.

The most common words of this class are when, where, whence, whither, how, and why. These are also called adverbial conjunctions.

3. An adverb that is used to ask a question is called an interrogative adverb; as, Where did he stand?

Some adverbs admit of comparison. They are compared like adjectives; as, soon, sooner, soonest; wisely, more wisely, most wisely; much, more, most.

# ORDER OF PARSING ADVERBS.

To parse an adverb, tell-

- I. The kind of adverb.
- 2. Its degree, if comparative or superlative.
- 3. Its construction what it modifies.

tell what

fro.

Thus—dverbs of always,

ace; as, r, above,

etimes it erb may sentence

yed. er; as,

legree;

called

Example I.—He then touched briefly upon the prominent events of the Revolution.

- 1. Then is an adverb of time, modifying the verb touched.
- 2. Briefly is an adverb of manner, modifying the verb touched.

Example II.—I remember, I remember.

The house where I was born.

Where is a conjunctive adverb, showing place. It modifies the verb was born, and connects the clause "where I was born" with the word house.

Example III. - When did he go?

When is an interrogative adverb of time, modifying the verb did go.

#### EXERCISE I.

sun

4

5

6.

*7*. 8.

Te

adject

Parse the verbs and the adverbs in the following sentences:—

- 1. Λ thousand hearts beat happily. Byron.
- 2. Down sunk the bell with a gurgling sound. -- Souther.
- Then did the little maid reply,"Seven boys and girls are we." WORDSWORTH.
- 4. Defect in manners is usually the defect of fine perceptions. EMERSON.
  - 5. On right, on left, above, below, Sprung up at once the lurking foe.—Scorr.
  - 6. Swiftly, swiftly flew the ship,
    Yet she sailed softly too.—COLERIDGE.
  - 7. The world is too much with us. WORDSWORTH.

hed. touched.

prominent

8. How often, oh, how often

I had wished that the ebbing tide

Would bear me away on its bosom

O'er the ocean wild and wide. — Longfellow.

### EXERCISE II.

Parse the adverbs in the following sentences: --

- I. There in the twilight cold and gray,
  Lifeless, but beautiful, he lay.—Longfellow.
- 2. And there lay the steed with his nostril all wide, But through it there rolled not the breath of his pride.
- 3. There is nothing like a primeval wood for color on a sunny day. C. D. WARNER.
  - 4. Why stand ye here all the day idle? BIBLE.
  - 5. Oh! what a tangled web we weave,
    When first we practise to deceive.—Scorr.
  - 6. O Solitude! where are the charms
    That sages have seen in thy face?—Cowper.
  - 7. O, why should the spirit of mortal be proud? Knox.
  - 8. The rain is falling where they lie. BRYANT.

# ADJECTIVE OR ADVERB.

Tell whether the italicized words in the following sentences are adjectives or adverbs, giving a reason in each case:—

- 1. She looks cold.
- 2. She looked coldly on the project.

odifies the orn " with

the verb

ing sen-

OUTHEY.

percep-

rH.

- 3. The apple feels hard.
- 4. He works hard.

An adjective is used when the quality or condition of the subject is given, and an adverb, when the manner of the action is described; as,—

The child seems happy. He lived happily.

Some adverbs are identical in form with adjectives; as, much, little, far, ill, hard, loud, soft, fast.

#### EXERCISE III.

Parse the adverbs and the adjectives in the following sentences:—

- 1. He lives long that lives well.
- 2. Still waters run deep.
- 3. Welcome her, all things youthful and sweet!
- 4. Then they praised him soft and low.
- 5. He drank of the water so cool and clear. Southey.
- 6. How fast the flitting figures come! BRYANT.
- 7. The shades of night were falling fast. Longfellow.
- 8. The door in the mountain-side shut fast.
- 9. A wondrous portal opened wide. Browning.
- 10. The tumult grew louder. HAWTHORNE.
- 11. Louder still the minstrels blew.
- 12. Colder and louder blew the wind,
  A gale from the Northeast.—Longfellow.

mean with Give that what

Te they

1.

2. 3.

4

Pre be eas

tions

below 2.

g.

#### EXERCISE IV.

What is an adverb? How are adverbs classified with respect to meaning? Give an example of each class. How are they classified with respect to use? State the two offices of a conjunctive adverb. Give an example of an interrogative adverb. Mention five adverbs that admit of comparison, and give the comparison of each. In what way are adjectives and adverbs alike? How do they differ?

## LESSON LXIII.

### PREPOSITIONS.

Tell what the following prepositions connect, and what relations they express:—

- 1. He stood on the bridge.
- 2. 'Twas the night before Christmas.
- 3. The tree was struck by lightning.
- 4. He died for his country.
- 5. The eyes of the sleepers waxed deadly and chill

Prepositions express such a variety of relations that they cannot be easily classified according to meaning. The most common relations expressed by prepositions are—

- 1. Place or direction; as, At home; towards the bridge; below the falls.
  - 2. Time; as, After breakfast; till noon; since morning.
- 3. Agency, instrumentality, or means; as, Killed by frost; cut with a hatchet; lost through carelessness.

as, much,

the sub-

action is

following

UTHEY.

LLOW.

- 4. Cause, or purpose; as, Thankful for good health; He votes from principle.
- 5. Possession; as, The voice of the speaker; the beauty of the rose; the blade of the knife.
  - 6. Definition; as, The virtue of temperance; the city of Rome.
  - 7. Object; as, The fear of death; the hope of reward.

Many other relations are implied, such as reference, expressed by about; association, by with; separation, by from; opposition, by against; substitution, by for; etc.

Certain phrases are used with the force of single prepositions. They are called compound prepositions; as, according to, in place of, in regard to, instead of, out of, on account of.

# ORDER OF PARSING PREPOSITIONS.

To parse a preposition, —

1

- 1. Name the part of speech.
- 2. Tell with what word it connects its object.
- 3. State the relation shown.

Example. - He goes on Sunday to the church. - Longfellow.

- 1. On is a preposition, connecting the noun Sunday with the verb goes, and showing the relation of time.
- 2. To is a preposition, connecting the noun church with the verb goes, and showing the relation of place.

#### EXERCISE I.

Parse the prepositions in the following sentences: -

1. At midnight, however, I was aroused by the tramp of horses' hoofs in the yard.

2. alon

3.

5. 6.

7.

Me words

Wh is used trance

2. Great turtles came up out of the water, and crawled along on a sandy place. — M. THOMPSON.

- 3. The scheme failed for want of support.
- 4. The Love that leads the willing spheres
  Along the unending track of years
  And watches o'er the sparrow's nest,
  Shall brood above thy winter rest.—BRYANT.
- By fairy hands their knell is rung;
   By forms unseen their dirge is sung. —Collins.
- 6. With my cross-bow I shot the Albatross.—Coleridge.
- 7. The little bird sits at his door in the sun. LOWELL.

# LESSON LXIV.

# CHOICE OF PREPOSITIONS.

- 1. John went to the store.
- 2. John is at the store.

Mention the prepositions in these sentences. Which of the two words implies motion? Which means in or near a place?

- 1. The lady is in the parlor.
- 2. Will you walk into the parlor?

What is the office of in? Of into? Which of the two prepositions is used to denote presence in a place? Which is used to denote entrance from the outside to the inside?

FELLOW.

He votes

y of the

f Rome.

essed by

tion, by

ositions.

in place

he verb

he verb

mp of

- 1. The table stands between the two windows.
- 2. The cards were distributed among forty pupils.

Name the prepositions and tell between what words they show relations. Which of these prepositions is used in speaking of two things? Which is used in speaking of more than two?

### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

ī.

Copy the following sentences, and fill the blanks with words that will express the right relations:—

- I. Is your father home?
- 2. He has gone —— the city.
- 3. My sister is —— school.
- 4. The children are playing the Park.
- 5. The oar dropped —— the water.
- 6. The pencils are the drawer.
- 7. Put the cards the box.
- 8. She staid home.
- 9. Clara divided the flowers —— her playmates.
- 10. I was sorry to see a quarrel —— the two sisters.

II.

1. Make a list of the words in Italics, with the prepositions which follow them:—

- 1. My card is different from yours.
- 2. The harness does not correspond to the carriage.
- 3. She feels the need of rest.
- 4. The man is in want of food.
- 5. Charles died of a fever.

WS.

show relawo things?

oupils.

ith words

ers.

positions

e.

6. He was killed by impure air.

7. The soldier died for his country.

8. I am disappointed in the portrait.

9. This house is similar to yours.

10. What is the matter with the child?

11. The man is looking for work.

12. The seamstress had difficulty in fitting the collar.

13. I am not familiar with the subject.

14. How does this room compare with yours in size?

Example. - different from, correspond to.

2. Use correctly, in sentences of your own, the phrases copied.

# LESSON LXV.

# STUDY OF SELECTION.

THE DAFFODILS.

I.

I wandered lonely as a cloud That floats on high o'er vales and hills, When all at once I saw a crowd, A host, of golden daffodils; Beside the lake, beneath the trees, Fluttering and dancing in the breeze.

II.

Continuous as the stars that shine
And twinkle on the Milky Way,
They stretched in never-ending line
Along the margin of a bay:
Ten thousand saw I at a glance,
Tossing their heads in sprightly dance.

#### III.

The waves beside them danced; but they
Outdid the sparkling waves in glee:
A poet could not but be gay,
In such a jocund company:
I gazed, — and gazed, — but little thought
What wealth the show to me had brought:

#### IV.

For oft, when on my couch I lie
In vacant or in pensive mood,
They flash upon that inward eye
Which is the bliss of solitude;
And then my heart with pleasure fills,
And dances with the daffodils.

WILLIAM WORDSWORTH.

Do

mε

wa

me

me

mo

des of t

poe

mean

Read the first stanza. Who is meant by 1? Why is wandered used instead of walked? What is the use of lonely? To what is the loneliness of the poet compared? What is the office of the second line? To what does that refer? What do the next two lines tell? Where were the daffodils? What is the office of the last line?

Read the second stanza. What do the first four lines describe? How were the daffodils arranged? What is the meaning of margin? Does the poet mean that he saw exactly ten thousand? What does he mean? What are the daffodils said to be doing?

Read the third stanza. What waves are spoken of? What did the waves do? In what did the daffodils surpass the waves? What is the meaning of the third and fourth lines? What do the last two lines tell?

Read the last stanza. Read the principal clause in the first statement. When do they flash upon the inward eye? What is a vacant mood? What is the meaning of pensive? What does the fourth line describe? Give in your own words the meaning of the first four lines of this stanza. What feeling did this sight awaken in the mind of the poet?

### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

#### I.

Use in sentences of your own the following words: -

it:

OSWORTH.

lered used the loneliond line? Where

wandered, golden, dancing, glance, mood,	lonely, beside, continuous, sprightly, vacant	floats, beneath, margin, glee,	host, fluttering, bay, jocund,
mood,	vacant,	pensive,	solitude

#### u.

Copy the following words, and opposite each write another word meaning nearly the same:—

gazed,	glee,	pleasure,	jocund,
nargin,	wealth,	sprightly,	show.

#### III.

Copy the poem, and commit it to memory.

# LESSON LXVI.

# CLASSES OF CONJUNCTIONS.

# I. - CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

Find in the following examples conjunctions that connect sentences, or words, phrases, and clauses of like kind, or having the same relation to the rest of the sentence:—

- 1. Art is long, and time is fleeting.
- 2. Games and carols closed the day.
- 3. The house was silent and deserted.
- 4. You see where Warren fell, and where other patriots fell with him.

Words, phrases, and clauses of like kind, or standing in the same relation to the rest of the sentence, are said to have the same construction or to be of equal rank. Conjunctions that connect sentences, or parts of sentences of equal rank, are called **co-ordinating conjunctions**. They may connect—

- 1. Two independent sentences; as, Be diligent, and you will succeed.
- 2. Two words in the same construction; as, The minstrel was infirm and old.
- 3. Two phrases in the same construction; as, They are alike in voice and in manner.
- 4. Two dependent clauses in the same construction; as, No one could tell whence they came or whither they went.

Co-ordinating conjunctions are divided into the following classes:-

- 1. Copulative, those that join similar parts; as, and, also, besides, likewise, moreover.
- 2. Adversative, those that join parts opposed in meaning; as, but, yet, however, still, nevertheless, notwithstanding.

the

ana

stat

princ denc

Com<sub>j</sub>

To

- 3. Alternative, those that imply a choice between two; as, either—or, neither—nor, whether—or.
- 4. Causal, those that express cause or consequence; as, for, therefore, hence, consequently.

Conjunctions used in pairs are called correlatives; as, both—and, either—or, neither—nor, not—but, not only—but.

# II. - SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

Mention the dependent clause in each of the following sentences, state its use, and tell how it is joined to the principal clause.

- 1. I would grant your request if I could.
- 2. He came, because he was needed.
- 3. Be silent, that you may hear.

Conjunctions that connect a dependent or subordinate clause to a principal clause are called subordinating conjunctions. They denote—

- T. Time; as, after, before, ere, since, till, when, while, as.
- 2. Place; as, where, whence.
- 3. Manner and comparison; as, than, as.
- 4. Cause or reason; as, because, since, as, that, whereas.
- 5. End or purpose; as, that, lest.
- 6. Condition; as, if, unless, except.
- 7. Concession; as, though, although.

Certain phrases performing the office of conjunctions may be called compound conjunctions; as, but also, as well as, as if, as though.

ORDER OF PARSING CONJUNCTIONS.

To parse a conjunction, tell —

- 1. Its class co-ordinating or subordinating.
- 2. Its use state what it connects.

sentences.

same rela-

e other

the same same consentences, ting con-

*ill succeed.* was *infirm* 

e alike in

, No one

lasses:—

o, besides,

ning; as,

Example 1.— Hear me for my cause, and be silent, that you may hear.

- 1. And is a co-ordinating conjunction, connecting the two independent members, "Hear me for my cause," and "be silent, that you may hear."
- 2. That is a subordinating conjunction, connecting the subordinate clause, "you may hear," to the principal clause, "be silent."

a

it

th

en

of

for

to

his

ord

of i

clas

rela

Example II .- Is the night chilly and dark?

1. And is a co-ordinating conjunction, connecting the two adjectives chilly and dark.

#### EXERCISE I.

Parse the conjunctions in the following sentences, and state the relation between the connected terms:—

I. My hair is gray, but not with years,

Nor grew it white
In a single night,
As men's have grown from sudden fears:
My limbs are bowed, though not with toil,
But rusted with a vile repose,
For they have been a dungeon's spoil,
And mine has been the fate of those
To whom the goodly earth and air

- Are banned, and barred, forbidden fare. Byron.

  2. Here rests his head upon the lap of earth,
  A youth to fortune and to fame unknown. Gray.
- 3. They deserved respect; for they were good men as well as brave, HAWTHORNE,

t, that you

two indent, that you

subordinate nt.''

o adjectives

d state the

RUN,

RAY.

men as

- 4. On either side the river lie

  Long fields of barley and of rye. Tennyson.
- 5. Neither a borrower nor a lender be. SHAKESPEARE.
- 6. As Cæsar loved me, I weep for him; as he was fortunate, I rejoice at it; as he was valiant, I honor him: but, as he was ambitious, I slew him.—SHAKESPEARE.
- 7. The test of a people is not in its occupations, but in its heroes. T. W. HIGGINSON.
  - 8. Then they praised him, soft and low,
    Called him worthy to be loved,
    Truest friend and noblest foe;
    Yet she neither spoke nor moved.—Tennyson.
- 9. One whole month elapsed before I knew the fate of the cargo.
- of the works of Milton cannot be comprehended or enjoyed, unless the mind of the reader co-operate with that of the writer. He does not paint a finished picture, or play for a mere passive listener. He sketches, and leaves others to fill up the outline. He strikes the key-note, and expects his hearer to make out the melody.—MACAULAY.

### EXERCISE II.

Name the two leading classes of conjunctions. What is a coordinating conjunction? What is meant by words, phrases, or clauses of equal rank? Illustrate. Tell how co-ordinating conjunctions are classified, and give examples of each class.

What is a subordinating conjunction? Mention some of the different relations denoted by subordinating conjunctions, and give illustrations.

What are correlative conjunctions? Give examples, Mention phrases that are used as conjunctions,

# LESSON LXVII.

# INTERJECTIONS.

Since interjections are not grammatically related to the other words in a sentence, the parsing of an interjection consists in simply naming the part of speech.

#### EXERCISE.

Mention the interjections in the following sentences, and tell what feeling each expresses:—

- I. Ah! what would the world be to us

  If the children were no more?—Longfellow.
- 2. Hark! let me listen for the swell of the surf.
  - 3. Ah! what a weary race my feet have run. WARTON.
- 4. Oh! wherefore come ye forth, in triumph from the North?—MACAULAY.
  - 5. Alas! I have nor hope nor health. Shelley.
- 6. And, lo! from far, as on they pressed, there came a glittering band.  $H_{EMANS}$ .
  - 7. Hark! hark! the lark at heaven's gate sings.
  - 8. Ha! laugh'st thou, Lochiel, my vision to scorn?
  - 9. For, lo! the blazing, rocking roof
    Down, down in thunder falls!—HORACE SMITH.
  - Heigh ho! daisies and buttercups,
     Fair yellow daffodils, stately and tall.
  - II. O joy! that in our embers
    Is something that doth live. WORDSWORTH,

gre

Mo

the

V seco

tory A rest

need I

acci

4 5

and 6. on w

### LESSON LXVIII.

## EXPLANATORY EXPRESSIONS.

- 1. Mr. Hall, our new neighbor, was the first one to greet us.
- 2. Washington, the first President, was buried at Mount Vernon.

Name the subject and the predicate in the first sentence. What is the name of the man spoken of? Who was he?

Who was buried at Mount Vernon? Who was Washington?

What is the explanatory part in the first sentence? What in the second sentence? In each sentence what marks separate the explanatory part from the rest of the sentence?

An explanatory expression should be separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma or commas.

### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Copy the following sentences, inserting commas where they are needed: —

- 1. The Falls of Montmorency are higher than Niagara.
- 2. Mr. Curtis the speaker of the evening was delayed by an accident.
  - 3. We heard Mr. Spurgeon the great London preacher.
  - 4. Lake Memphremagog is renowned for its beautiful scenery.
- 5. Thomas D'Arcy McGee the great Canadian statesman and orator was assassinated.
- 6. Ottawa the capital of Canada was named from the river on which it is built.

and tell

the other

om the

came a

?

- 7. San Francisco the largest city in California is noted for its fine harbor.
  - 8. An address was given by the Rev. W. H. Church D.D.

### LESSON LXIX.

# INTERMEDIATE EXPRESSIONS.

- 1. They, too, carried a flag.
- 2. The general, riding to the front, led the attack.
- 3. He has bought, I hear, a large tract of land.

Read the first statement. What word is placed between the verb and its subject? How is this word separated from the rest of the sentence?

What is the second statement about? What did the general do? What is the use of the phrase, riding to the front? How is it separated from the rest of the sentence?

What is the subject of the verb has bought? What is its object? What words are placed between the verb and its object? How are they separated from the rest of the sentence?

Words, phrases, or clauses placed between parts of a sentence closely related, should generally be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.

#### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Copy the following sentences, and insert commas where they are needed:—

- 1. He will no doubt follow your advice.
- 2. I did him however a great injustice,

si

ci

Wh Ho

sep

ent Wh

four

oted for

D.D.

ck.

verb and entence? eral do? eparated

object? are they

a seni from

re they

3. It is I think the third house from the corner.

4. "My dear Edward" said he "this is truly kind."

5. The book having been read was returned to the library.

6. He was on the whole pleased with the work.

7. The boatman who knew the danger told the passengers to sit still.

8. This was in fact the only interesting feature of the exercises.

9. He has from first to last given us the benefit of his advice.

10. Perhaps too he has forgotten the circumstance.

#### LESSON LXX.

#### TRANSPOSED EXPRESSIONS.

1. The building will be completed in a short time.

2. In a short time, the building will be completed.

s. The flower will fade if you pick it.

4. If you pick the flower, it will fade.

What is said about the building? Mention the verb in this sentence. What phrase modifies the verb will be completed? Where is it placed? How does the second sentence differ from the first? How is the phrase separated from the rest of the sentence?

Read the principal clause in the third sentence. Read the dependent clause. Upon what verb does the dependent clause depend? Where is it placed? Where is the dependent clause placed in the fourth sentence? How is it separated from the rest of the sentence?

When a phrase or a clause is placed out of its natural position, it is said to be transposed.

A transposed phrase or clause should generally be separated from the rest of the sentence by the comma; as, In the morning, sow thy seed.

Note. — If the phrase is closely united with the sentence, the comma is not used; as, Beneath the window is a wooden bench.

#### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Copy the following sentences, and place commas where they are needed: —

- 1. Before we could reach the spot the gate was closed.
- 2. On entering the house he found everything in confusion.
- 3. In the middle of January he was summoned home.
- 4. If there were time to spare I should be glad to give you an account of our journey.

II

er

ca

W

th

fro

By

ot: Ag

- 5. Without hesitating an instant he stepped forward.
- 6. If you take my advice you will turn back.
- 7. When everything was ready the doors were thrown open.
- 8. One cold winter night a knock came at the door.
- 9. As he entered the city he noticed the many changes that had taken place since his last visit.
  - 10. In skating over thin ice safety lies in speed.
- 11. The general who was on horseback ordered the troops to halt.
  - 12. If thou be a king where is thy crown?
  - 13. If you take my advice you will turn back.
- 14. Before giving way to anger try to find a reason for not being angry.

ion, it is

sepa-

na is not

hey arc

ısion.

e you

open.

s that

troops

r not

#### LESSON LXXI.

## QUOTATION MARKS.

"Harry," said Herbert Green, "when are you going to try your new skates?"

"To-morrow," replied Harry. "Will you go with me?"

"Yes; where shall we go?" said Herbert.

"If we could get an early start," said Harry, "we might go down to Turner's Pond."

"All right," said Herbert; "I'll be ready."

Whose remark is repeated in the first sentence of this conversation? What did Herbert Green say? Give his exact words. What three words divide Herbert's question into two parts? How is each part enclosed?

Read Harry's reply. Give his exact words.

Whose words are repeated in the third remark?

When the words of one person are repeated by another, they are called **quotations**. The little marks [" "] that enclose the exact words used by another are called **quotation marks**.

Whose words are repeated in the fourth remark? What words divide this quotation into two parts? How are the words said Harry separated from the rest of the sentence?

Read the first part of the last quotation. Read the second part. By what is each part enclosed?

When the exact words of a person are repeated by another, they should be enclosed by quotation marks; as, Agassiz once said, "I have no time to waste in making money."

When a quotation is divided by other words, each part should be enclosed by quotation marks; as, "The greatest of faults," says Carlyle, "is to be conscious of none."

#### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Write a short conversation between two girls about a picnic. Be careful to use quotation marks correctly.

## LESSON LXXII.

C

co

wi

yo

yo

off

## INDIRECT QUOTATIONS.

- 1. Robert said, "I will carry the basket."
- 2. Robert said that he would carry the basket.
- 3. Mr. Brown said to us, "Do not go through my field."
- 4. Mr. Brown said that we must not go through his field.

Read Robert's words in the first example. Whose remark is repeated in the second example? Are his exact words given?

When one person repeats the exact words of another, the quotation is called a direct quotation.

When one person tells what another has said, but does not use the speaker's exact words, the quotation is called an indirect quotation.

What kind of quotation do you see in the third example? What kind in the fourth example?

By what are the direct quotations enclosed? With what kind of letter does each begin? What mark is placed before each direct quotation?

ch part eatest of

picnic.

h my

gh his

epeated

otation

use the tion.

What

ind of t quoThe first word of a direct quotation should begin with a capital letter. If the quotation is short, it should be separated from the preceding part of the sentence by a comma; as, The man said, "I have finished the work."

An indirect quotation should not be enclosed by quotation marks, should not begin with a capital letter, and generally should not be separated from the preceding words by a comma; as, The man said that he had finished the work.

#### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Copy the following sentences, and place quotation marks and commas wherever they are needed:—

- 1. Once more he cried Stop a minute.
- 2. Charles said that he had received a letter from his uncle.
- 3. Mother said Clara Green may I go down to the bridge with Edith Hope this afternoon?
  - 4. Herbert says that we planted the seeds too deep.
- 5. Listen to this boys said she and hear what was done with your letter.
- 6. This is a pleasant day said Mr. Snow. Does it not make you happy Emily?
- 7. What did he say to you when he came by asked the officer.
  - 8. He told me that he had to run to save his life.
  - 9. Sisters and brothers little maid
    How many may you be?
    How many? Seven in all she said
    And wondering looked at me.

# LESSON LXXIII.

(Review pages 131-148, Book I.)

# LETTERS ORDERING BOOKS.

Richmond, Que., Sept. 7, 1895.

The Copp Clark Co., Toronto, Ont.

Gentlemen: — Please send me, by the Canadian express, the following books: —

- 1 Hawthorne's Twice-Told Tales, School Edition.
- 1 Uncle Tom's Cabin, Popular Edition.
- I J. D. Marmet's Victory of Chateauguay.
- 2 T. Sterry Hunt's Treatises on Geology.

Please send the bill by mail.

Yours respectfully,

E. D. Read.

11

ar

Re

and

Note. — If you are ordering books that are published in various styles, state in your order not only the title of the book, but also the edition and style of binding that you profer. It is well to state also the author's name.

#### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

- 1. Copy the foregoing letter.
- 2. Think of some book that you would like to own, and write to the publishers and order the book.
- 3. Write to the publishers of your Reader or of your Geography, and order a sufficient number of copies of the book to supply your class.

# LESSON LXXIV.

# MISCELLANEOUS ORDERS.

1. Write to William Gray, Canton, N. Y., ordering the following seeds to be sent, by mail, to your address:—

I pkg. Pansy, light blue, 15 cts.; I pkg. Pansy, King of the Blacks, 15 cts.; I pkg. Verbena, searlet, 20 cts.; I pkg. Verbena, mixed varieties, 20 cts.; I pkg. Sweet Mignonette, 5 cts.; I oz. Sweet Peas, mixed colors, 10 cts.

Follow the form given in the last lesson.

2. Write a letter to some business firm that you know, ordering goods of some kind. State clearly the number and kind of articles that you want, and tell how you wish them sent.

# LESSON LXXV.

# MISCELLANEOUS APPLICATIONS.

Windsor, Ont., July 17, 1895.

Rev. T. B. Proulx, D D., LL.D., Vice-Rector, Laval University, Montreal, Que.

Sir: — Please send me a copy of your last catalogue, and oblige,

Yours respectfully,

Albert Raymond.

Who is addressed in this letter? How many titles are added to his

7, 1895.

express,

ion.

s, state in of binding

d write

graphy, ly your name? What marks separate those titles from the remainder of the address and from each other?

#### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

- 1. Copy the letter at the head of this lesson.
- 2. Write to the principal of some large school asking for a circular of the school.
- 3. Write to a dry goods firm for samples of goods. Tell what kind of goods you wish.

#### LESSON LXXVI.

#### BILLS.

\_\_\_\_

Arnprior, Ont., Nov. 1, 1895.

a

th of na

pla

writ

Mr. Lyman Gilbert,

Bought of Smith & Howard.

								1
50 lbs. Coffee Sugar,	(a)	8¢					\$ 4	
10 lbs. Java Coffee,	66	35¢					3	
4 lbs. Oat Meal,	"	5¢						1
8 doz. Eggs,	"	20¢					I	
4 gals. Molasses,	66	70¢	•				2	1
50 lbs. Butter,	66	25¢					12	2
2 doz. Lemons,	"	15¢						
							\$24	-

Received Payment,

Smith & Howard, per Scott.

ler of the

for a cir.

Cell what

1, 1895.

ard.

\$	4	00
	3	50
		20
	I	60
	2	80
1	2	50
		30
\$2	4	90

ırd,

When a bill is paid, the person to whom the money was due gives a receipt, or writes "Received Payment," and signs his name. The latter is called *receipting a bill*.

When a clerk receipts a bill, he signs the name of his employer, and then writes his own name below. In the example above, a clerk named *Scott* receipted the bill for his employers.

What should be written first in a bill? Where should the name of the person that buys the articles be written? Where should the name of the person or firm that sells the articles be written? How are the names of the articles written?

Miss Helen R. White,

Sarnia, April 23, 1895.

To Margaret D. Harris, Dr.

1885		,	11	
Mar.	3	I Mozart Sonata	d.	
46	0	T Hands C .	P	50
"	10	Nocture 7		75
	19	I Nocturno, Zimmermann		50
Apr.	3	I Songs without Words, Mendelssohn	11 -	-
66	9	I Rondo, Beethoven	1	00
"	22	Torm Instruct		35
	23	I Term Instruction	20	00
			# 00	-

Received Payment,

Margaret D. Harris.

Of what is the second bill a record? Where are the different items placed? Where are the dates written? What words should not be written until the bill is paid?

#### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Rule paper as in the models given, and copy the two bills.

#### LESSON LXXVII.

#### BILLS.

#### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

ı.

Herman Fuller bought the following articles of Bell and Norton, Minneapolis, Minn., Dec. 17, 1883: 1 Saddle @ \$15; 1 Bridle @ \$5; 1 Riding Whip @ \$2; 2 pairs Skates @ \$2.50; 2 Pocket Knives @ \$.75; 1 Hatchet @ \$1.25.

Make out the bill, and receipt it in your own name as clerk.

11.

Mrs. Harriet West of Buffalo, N.Y., made a dress for Mrs. Orlando Foster. She furnished the following articles:  $2\frac{1}{2}$  yds. French Silesia @ 22%; 7 yds. Cambric @ 6%; 2 doz. Buttons @ \$1.00; 3 Whalebones @ 10%; Braid, Silk, and Twist, 40%. She charged \$10 for making the dress.

Make out a receipted bill, dated May 10, 1887. Follow the Form given in Lesson XIV.

#### LESSON LXXVIII.

#### RECEIPTS.

A written acknowledgment of money or goods received is called a Receipt; as, —

\$600. Waterloo, Que., Mar. 1, 1895.

Received from George S. Abbott.

Sixty and 700 Dollars, to balance account.

M. J. Blair.

\$30. St. Johns, June 1, 1895.

Received from Helen M. Crawford
Thirty Dollars, for board to this date.

Mrs. C. K. Wright.

When is a receipt given? By whom is it signed? In how many places is the amount written? How is it written? Why is it written

For what purpose was the first sum paid? What is meant by "balancing" an account?

#### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

I.

Copy the foregoing receipts. Be careful to arrange the different parts like those in the models given.

II.

Suppose Walter D. Moore rents a house that you own. On

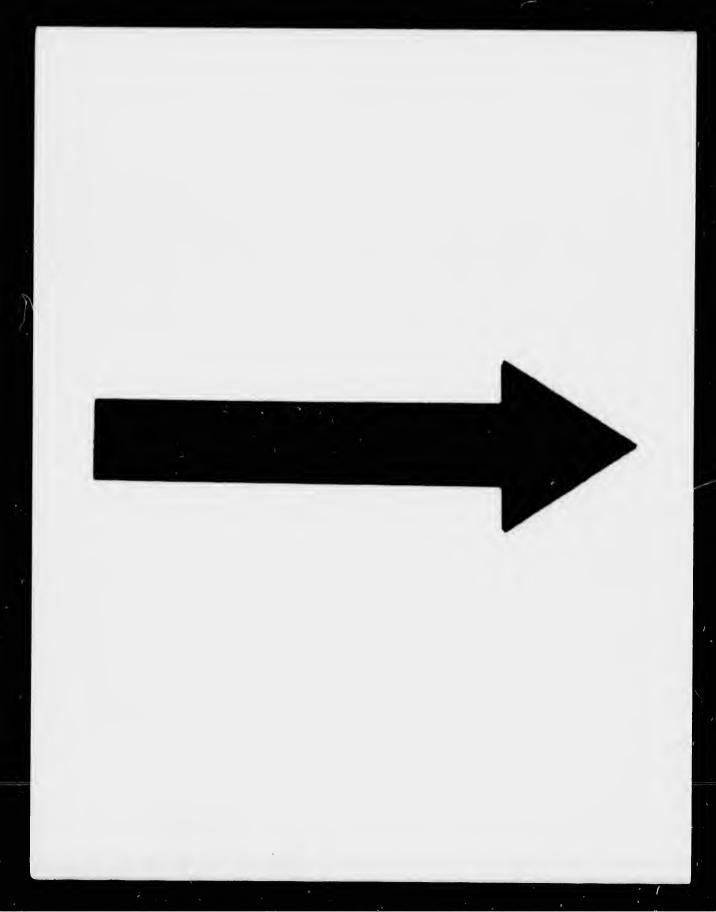
nd Nor-\$15; 1 2.50; 2

erk.

or Mrs.  $2\frac{1}{2}$  yds. Buttonest, 40%.

ow the

ved is



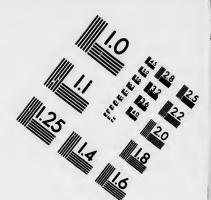
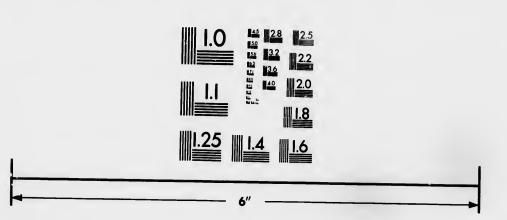


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580 (716) 872-4503 STATE OF THE STATE



the first day of this month he paid you thirty dollars for rent of house to that time.

Write a receipt for the amount received. Follow the Forms given in this lesson.

Look at the bills in Lesson XIV., and write the two receipts that might have been given in place of the receipted bills.

#### LESSON LXXIX.

# ADVERTISEMENT'S FOR ARTICLES LOST.

Lost. — On Saturday afternoon, between the Bank of Commerce and the Post Office, a small black morocco pocket-book, containing a check on the Bank of Commerce and one or two dollars in silver. The finder will be suitably rewarded upon leaving the article at 714 Notre Dame Street.

What was lost? What does the phrase on Saturday afternoon tell? What does the second phrase tell? What words describe the pocket-book? What did the pocket-book contain? Where was the finder requested to leave the article?

When you write an advertisement about an article that is lost, describe the article so clearly that it may be known from your description.

WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Suppose you have lost one of the articles named below. Write an advertisement about the lost article, to be inserted in one of the papers in your town.

A

bracelet, knife, dog, horse,

for rent of

the Forms

vo receipts 's

of Comeket-book, ne or two ded upon

noon tell? the pocketthe finder

at is lost, om your

Write ne of the

# LESSON LXXX.

# ADVERTISEMENTS FOR ARTICLES FOUND.

FOUND. — In Main Street, last Friday morning, a watch. The owner can have the article by calling at this office, proving the property, and paying for this notice.

What article was found? Where was it found? Where was it found? What is meant by proving the property?

When you write an advertisement about an article that has been found, do *not* describe the article fully, lest the wrong person should claim it.

## WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Suppose you have found one of the things named below. Write a notice for a paper, advertising the article.

muff,

coat,

bank-book,

travelling-bag.

# LESSON LXXXI.

# ADVERTISEMENTS FOR HELP.

1.

Wanted. — A neat, strong girl for general housework; must understand cooking; references required. Apply at 22 Park Avenue.

Wanted. — A bright, active, honest boy for office-work.

Apply by letter, stating age and giving references. Address Dr. L. B. Porter, P. O. Box 1247, Brantford, Ont.

What is the first advertisement for? What qualifications must the girl have? How is the applicant expected to apply?

What is the second advertisement for? How is the applicant to apply?

#### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

- 1. Copy the foregoing advertisements.
- 2. Write an advertisement asking for a woman or a girl to take care of young children. Mention some of the qualities that the applicant must possess.
- 3. Write a letter in answer to the second advertisement above. Give for reference the name of your teacher.

Note. — Do not forget the proper form for the heading, the address, and the other parts. Remember that a neat, well-written letter, sent in answer to an advertisement, will aid the applicant in securing the desired position.

# LESSON LXXXII.

# ADVERTISEMENTS FOR SITUATIONS.

Wanted. — By a young man, a situation as coachman; understands the care of horses and is a careful driver; good references. Address F. B., 321 Dominion Square.

Who advertises for a situation? What situation does he wish? What does the writer say he can do?

#### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

pu.

1. Write an advertisement for a situation as gardener.

. Address

ons must the

applicant to

r a girl to ulities that

ent above.

ress, and the to an adver-

nan ; uner ; good

h? What

2. Write an advertisement for a situation as cook.

3. Write an advertisement for a situation as janitor.

4. A dressmaker wishes to go out by the day. Write an advertisement for her.

# LESSON LXXXIII.

# NOTICES OF PUBLIC MEETINGS.

The annual meeting of the Montreal Philharmonic Society will be held at the Academy of Music on Tuesday, the 25th inst., at 3 o'clock P.M.

Of what meeting is this a notice? Where is it to be held? When is it to be held?

#### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

T

Rev. William Howard, D.D., will deliver a lecture on Temperance at some church or hall in your place. Write a notice of the lecture.

IT.

Some society in your place is to hold an annual meeting for the election of officers. Write a notice of the meeting.

TIT

Your school is to have public exercises. Write a notice telling where and when the exercises are to be held.

IV

Write public notices similar to those you heard read from the pulpit last Sunday.

# LESSON LXXXIV.

# TELEGRAPHIC DESPATCHES.

1. Write from the items given below, telegraphic despatches of not more than ten words each.

Note. — Do not count the words in the addresses nor in the signature.

1.

Huntingdon, Que., Dec. 17, 1889.

Mrs. G. W. Hall,

Beauharnois.

I shall not reach home to-night, on account of a railroad accident. No one is injured.

G. W. Hall.

2.

Park Hill, Ont., March 18, 1887.

Mr. H. R. Raker,

Bedford, Que.

The house is sold, and possession is to be given on May 1st. I have written you full particulars.

R. S. Allen.

3.

Baltimore, Md., Dec. 18, 1884.

To the Passenger Agent of the Canadian Pacific Railroad,

Windsor Station, Montreal.

Please reserve for me a lower berth in the sleeping-car that leaves Montreal for Mattawa on Friday, the 23d inst.

S. T. Norton.

2. Write five telegraphic despatches to be sent by you to-day.

# LESSON LXXXV.

#### INVITATIONS.

Invitations are usually written in the third person; thus—
FORM OF INVITATION.

Mr. and Mrs. Edward
Stanley request the please
we of Mr. George King's
company at dinner, on the
evening of Tuesday, June
24th, at six o'clock.

927 Oak Quenne,
Friday, June 18th.

c despatches of

nature.

Dec. 17, 1889.

of a railroad

W. Hall.

ch 18, 1887.

ven on May

S. Allen.

c. 18, 1884.

eeping-car inst. Norton.

ou to-day.

The form of the answer should correspond to the form of the invitation, as in the following examples:—

#### 1. - Acceptance.

Mr. George King accepts with pleasure Mr. and Mrs. Edward Stanley's kind invitation for Tuesday evening, June 24th.
314 Walnut Street, June 14th.

#### 2. - Regret.

Mr. George King regrets that, on account of a previous engagement, he is unable to accept Mr. and Mrs. Edward Stanley's kind invitation for Tuesday evening, June 24th.

lo

to

rei Es

Wr

witl not

# WRITTEN EXERCISES.

I.

Copy on note-paper the foregoing forms. Begin the first line, and also the address or date, a little farther to the right than the other lines.

to the form of

pleasure ind inviouth.

account nable to yo kind ne 24th.

first line, right than

# LESSON LXXXVI.

# EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

To the Teacher. — Give frequent exercises in composition similar to the following. When needful, let pupils refer to the forms and directions for letter-writing given in preceding lessons. Accept no careless work from the pupil, either in thought or in expression.

#### EXERCISE I.

Write to a publisher, and order six different books. State the title of each book, and mention the style of binding that you prefer.

#### EXERCISE II.

You have lost a watch. Write an advertisement about the lost article, to be inserted in one of the newspapers in your town.

#### EXERCISE III.

Mrs. Margaret Joy, who lives at Stanbridge, Que., wishes to rent a house in Lachine. She writes to Hunt and Sayles, Real Estate Agents, Lachine, Que., telling them what kind of house she wants. Write the letter for her.

#### EXERCISE IV.

A concert is to be given in your town next Tuesday evening. Write a notice, telling when and where it is to be held.

#### EXERCISE V.

Your mother is away from home, and your father has met with a serious accident. Send to your mother a telegram of not more than ten words, asking her to come home immediately.

# EXERCISE VI.

Write an order, in the third person, for such groceries as will be needed in your family for the coming week. Use in your order the real name of some grocer.

## EXERCISE VII.

You wish the position of assistant librarian in the public library of your town. Write to the Library Committee, making an application for the position. State your qualifications, and give for reference the name of your teacher.

# EXERCISE VIII.

On the first day of this month Edward T. Dunn paid you twenty dollars for instruction in German. Write a receipt for

# EXERCISE IX.

gi

cal

me thin cas pre beco tran

- 1. Mr. and Mrs. Charles South invite you to dinner next Thursday at six o'clock. Write the invitation.
  - 2. Write an answer, accepting the invitation.
- 3. Write an answer, declining the invitation. for declining. Give a reason

ch groceries as week. Use in

in the public mittee, making lifications, and

unn paid you a receipt for

dinner next

ive a reason

# PART THIRD.

# RELATIONS OF WORDS-SYNTAX.

Syntax treats of the grammatical relations of words in sentences. The relation that any part of speech bears to other parts of speech in the same sentence is called its construction.

**\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*** 

# LESSON LXXXVII.

# CONSTRUCTIONS OF THE NOUN.

The most common constructions of the noun have already been given. The noun may be used—

1. As the subject of a verb; as,—

The sun shines.

The subject of a verb is in the nominative case. This is called the subject nominative.

2. As a predicate nominative. A noun that completes the meaning of an intransitive verb, and refers to the same person or thing as the subject of the verb, is said to be in the nominative case after the verb. It completes the predicate, and is called a predicate noun or a predicate nominative. The verbs be, become, appear, look, seem, etc., and the passive forms of a few transitive verbs are followed by a predicate nominative; as,—

Webster was a statesman.

Man became a living soul. He was elected senator.

## 3. As an objective predicate; as, -

They made him secretary.

In this sentence him is the direct object of the verb, and cretary completes the meaning of the verb make and shows what they made him. A noun that completes the meaning of a transitive verb and describes its object is called an objective predicate. The verbs make, appoint, elect, call, choose, and others of similar meaning, are followed by the objective predicate.

When these verbs are used in the passive voice, they are followed by the predicate nominative; as,—

# He will be made secretary.

SC

gı

60

nex

or

etc

sai

4. In apposition. A noun added to a noun or a pronoun, to explain or describe its meaning, is called an appositive, or is said to be in apposition with the first noun or pronoun. Two words in apposition are in the same case; as,—

Motley, the *historian*, was an American. (Nominative case.) We met your brother, the *general*. (Objective case.)

5. In the nominative absolute. A noun used absolutely with a participle, its case not depending upon any other word, is said to be in the nominative case absolute; as,—

The train being late, they returned to the hotel.

6. In address. When a noun is used in addressing a person or a thing, it is said to be in the nominative case of address; as,—

Friends, are you convinced? Ring, happy bells, across the snow.

7. As a possessive modifying another noun; as,-

We sat by the fisher's cottage.

The noun denoting the thing possessed is sometimes omitted; as, He called at your mother's [house].

8. As the object of a transitive verb (or of its participles or infinitives); as,—

The boy waved a *flag*.

The horse, hearing the *cars*, stopped.

'Tis sweet to hear the merry *lark*.

As the object of a preposition; as,—
 We spoke not a word of sorrow.

10. As an indirect object to show to or for whom or what something is done; as,—

He gave the man a coat (He gave a coat to the man).

In the first form, the noun coat is the direct object of the verb gave, and the noun man the indirect object.

She bought the bird a cage (She bought a cage for the bird).

In the first form, the noun cage is the direct object of the verb bought, and the noun bird is the indirect object.

As these examples show, the *indirect* object alone is used when the noun stands next the verb, the preposition when the noun is separated from the verb.

or an adverb. When nouns expressing time, distance, weight, value, etc., are used like adverbs, they are called adverbial objects, or are said to be in the objective case, adverbially; as,—

He held the office three years.

The walk is three feet wide.

Do not remain a moment longer.

ws what they
a transitive
predicate.
rs of similar

are followed

pronoun, to e, or is said Two words

ative case.) case.)

solutely with

otel. a person or s; as,—

#### EXERCISE I.

Name the case, and give the construction of each noun in the following sentences:—

- I. Every man's task is his life-preserver. EMERSON.
- 2. He took great pains to give us all the information we needed. HOLMES.
  - Then give him, for a soldier meet,
     A soldier's cloak for winding-sheet. Scort.
  - 4. I am monarch of all I survey. -- COWPER.
  - Our fortress is the good greenwood,
     Our tent the cypress-tree. BRYANT.
  - 6. They made me queen of the May. TENNYSON.
- 7. The colonists were now no longer freemen; they were entirely dependent on the king's pleasure.—HAWTHORNE.
  - 8. The harp, his sole remaining joy,
    Was carried by an orphan boy.—Scorr.
  - 9. Brethren, the sower's task is done. BRYANT.
  - 10. Yet fair as thou art, thou shunnest to glide,
    Beautiful stream! by the village side.—BRYANT.
- 11. The supper being over, the strangers requested to be shown to their place of repose. HAWTHORNE.
- 12. An ancient clock, that important article of cottage furniture, ticked on the opposite side of the room.—IRVING.
- 13. Good friends, sweet friends, let me not stir you up to such a sudden flood of mutiny.—Shakespeare.

 $\Gamma H$ 

14. We have no bird whose song will match the nightingale's in compass, none whose note is so rich as that of the European blackbird; but for mere rapture I have never heard the bobolink's rival.—Lowell.

#### EXERCISE II.

- I. Write sentences illustrating five different constructions of a noun in the nominative case.
- 2. Write sentences illustrating six different constructions of a noun in the objective case.

# LESSON LXXXVIII.

# CONSTRUCTIONS OF THE PRONOUN.

# I. — AGREEMENT WITH ANTECEDENT.

What determines the person, number, and gender of the italicized pronouns in the following sentences?—

- 1. The host moved about among his guests.
- 2. Here is the lady that rang the bell.
- 3. Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.

A pronoun must agree in person, number, and gender with its antecedent.

The antecedent of a relative pronoun is sometimes omitted; as, [He] Who breaks, pays.

ch noun in

rson. rmation we

OTT.

they were

lide,

ted to be

ttage fur-

ou up to

The relative pronoun is sometimes omitted; as, Observe the language well in all [that] you write.

It is sometimes used indefinitely without an antecedent, as the subject or as the object of a verb; as, It rains. Come and trip it as you go. This is often called the impersonal use.

It is often used as the subject of a verb which is followed by the real subject; as, It is impossible to hear.

#### EXERCISE I.

Give the antecedent, and the person, number, and gender of each pronoun in the following sentences:—

- 1. The evil that men do lives after them.
- 2. Not a boy in the class knew his lesson.
- 3. And the women are weeping and wringing their hands For those who will never come home to the town.
- 4. He that is giddy thinks that the world turns round.
- 5. What is that sound which now bursts on his ear?
- 6. After the dinner-table was removed, the hall was given up to the younger members of the family, who made its old walls ring with their merriment as they played at romping games. IRVING.
  - 7. I thrice presented him a kingly crown,
    Which he did thrice refuse. Shakespeare.
  - 8. Thou art Freedom's now, and Fame's, One of the few, the immortal names, That were not born to die.—HALLECK.

Observe the

lent, as the

wed by the

gender of

eir hands own.

round. ear ?

vas given e its old

romping

II. - CASE-RELATIONS.

The case-relations of the pronoun are the same as those of the noun.

EXERCISE I.

Explain the use of each italicized case-form in the following sentences:—

- I. If I were hc, I should not go.
- 2. It must have been she whom you saw.
- 3. To whom did he refer?
- 4. Do you know who I am?
- 5. Who do you think will be chosen?
- 6. Whom did he call?
- 7. Whom do you wish to see?
- 8. Who is it that you wish to see?
- 9. Could it have been they that called?
- 10. I am he whom you seek.
- II. Is it I that you mean?
- 12. Between you and me, I do not care how the matter ends.

#### EXERCISE II.

Mention the case, and state the construction of each italicized pronoun in the following sentences:—

- I. The great man is he who does not lose his child's heart.
- 2. I know not what course others may take; but, as for me, give me liberty or give me death!—Patrick Henry.
  - 3. It is I; be not afraid. BIBLE.
  - 4. What do we give to our beloved? E. B. Browning.

- 5. What in me is dark,
  Illumine; what is low, raise and support.—MILTON.
- 6. Who, of all that address the public ear, whether in church, or court-house, or hall of state, has such an attentive audience as the town-crier?—HAWTHORNE.
  - 7. We all do fade as a leaf. BIBLE.
  - 8. He is the freeman whom the truth makes free.
  - 9. Breathes there the man with soul so dead Who never to himself hath said,

    This is my own, my native land?—Scott.
  - 10. "Hadst thou stayed I must have fled!"

    This is what the vision said.—Longfellow.

# LESSON LXXXIX.

# CONSTRUCTIONS OF THE ADJECTIVE.

Which adjectives in the following sentences modify nouns directly, and which modify a noun or a pronoun through the verb?—

- 1. A soft answer turneth away wrath.
- 2. Ring out, wild bells.
- з. The sky is clear.
- 4. He painted the house white.
- 5. Her beauty made me glad.
- I. An adjective that modifies a noun or a pronoun directly is said to be used attributively; as,—

Drowsy tinklings lull the distant fold,

- MILTON. Whether in

whether in in attentive

ree.

k,

ad

T. V.

is directly,

lirectly is

II. An adjective loosely attached to its noun is said to be used appositively; as,—

No misfortune, public or privace, could oppress him.

III. An adjective that completes the predicate, and shows what is asserted of the subject of the verb, or describes the object of the verb, is called a predicate adjective, or is said to be used predicatively; as,—

Snow is white.
They set the prisoner free.

In poetry an adjective is sometimes used for an adverb; as,—

Silent rows the gondolier.

#### EXERCISE I.

Tell how each adjective is used in the following sentences:-

- 1. The lamps shone o'er fair women and brave men.
- 2. Is it where the feathery palm-trees rise,
  And the date grows ripe under sunny skies?
  Or 'midst the green islands of glittering seas,
  Where fragrant forests perfume the breeze?
- 3. The fields were green, and the sky was blue. Southey.
- 4. The sea is mighty, but a mightier sways His restless billows. BRYANT.
- 5. He wrapped her warm in his seaman's coat.
- 6. My keepers grew compassionate. Byron.
- 7. Besides, our losses have made us thrifty. Browning,

8. Heigh-ho! daisies and buttercups,
 Fair yellow daffodils, stately and tall!When the wind wakes, how they rock in the grasses,
 And dance with the cuckoo-buds, slender and small!

#### EXERCISE II.

- 1. Write four sentences containing adjectives used attributively.
- 2. Write three sentences containing adjectives used predicatively, with intransitive verbs.
- 3. Write three sentences containing adjectives used predicatively, with transitive verbs.

## LESSON XC.

#### THE VERB.

#### AGREEMENT WITH SUBJECT.

What determines the person and number forms of the italicized verbs in the following sentences?—

- 1. The stream flows swiftly.
- 2. Thou art the man.
- 3. John and Henry are absent.
- 4. John or Henry is absent.
- 5. The committee has been appointed.

When the form of the subject determines the form of the verb, a verb is said to agree with its subject in person and number; as,—

I see; thou seest; he sees.

Two or more singular subjects connected by and require a plural verb; as,—

Time and tide wait for no man.

If the subjects refer to the same person or thing, the verb must be singular; as, The soldier and statesman has passed away.

When the subjects are preceded by *each*, *every*, or *no*, they refer to things considered separately, and require a singular verb; as, Each day and each hour brings its own duties.

Two or more singular subjects connected by or or nor require a singular verb; as,—

He or she was in the wrong.

A collective noun requires a verb in the singular when it denotes the collection as a whole, and a verb in the plural, when it denotes the individuals in the collection separately; as,—

The congregation was dismissed.

The whole congregation were in tears.

#### EXERCISE T.

State the person and the number of each italicized verb in the following sentence, and tell why these forms are used:—

- 1. The difficulties were all over now, and everything was settled.
  - 2. A little fire is quickly trodden out.

he grasses,
and small!

sed attribu-

sed predica-

sed predica-

ne italicized

ed.

- 3. Delicacy and brilliancy *characterise* nearly all the California flowers.
  - 4. The derivation of these words is uncertain.
  - 5. It is an ill wind that blows nobody good.
  - 6. Neither the secretary nor the treasurer was present.
  - 7. The army is needed for the defence of the country.
- 8. How *does* such a loose pile of sticks maintain its place during a heavy wind?
  - 9. A hundred eager fancies and busy hopes keep him awake.
  - 10. The council were divided in their opinions.
  - 11. Slow and sure comes up the golden year.
  - 12. Either ability or inclination was wanting.
- 13. Let us hold fast the great truth that the people are responsible.
  - 14. A word or an epithet paints a whole scene.
  - 15. The saint, the father, and the husband prays. Burns.
  - 16. Seasons return, but not to me returns

    Day, or the sweet approach of even or morn.—MILTON.

#### EXERCISE II.

- I. Write three sentences in each of which the verb has two or more singular subjects connected by and.
- 2. Write three sentences in each of which the verb has two or more singular subjects connected by or or nor.
- 3. Write two sentences in each of which the subject is a collective noun denoting the collection as a whole.
- 4. Write two sentences in each of which the subject is a collective noun denoting the individuals in the collection separately.

the Cali-

present. ountry. its place

im awake.

eople are

-Burns.

- MILTON.

has two

has two

ject is a

icct is a ion sepaLESSON XCI.

#### CONSTRUCTIONS OF INFINITIVES.

The chief constructions of the infinitives, including those already given, are the following:—

I. The simple infinitive, without to, is used after the verbs may, can, must, dare, etc., as,—

Men must work.

- II. Both the infinitive with to and the participial infinitive may be used, like a noun—
  - 1. As the subject of a verb; as, -

To see is to be eve. Seeing is believing.

2. As a predicate nominative; as,—

To hesitate is to fail. Begging is not serving.

3. As the object of a verb; as, -

We purpose to call a meeting. We purpose calling a meeting.

4. As the object of a preposition.

\*She was about to speak.
On reaching the door, he paused.

III. The infinitive with to is used -

I. To modify a noun, an adjective, or an adverb; as,—
There is a time to weep.

She is eager to go.

He is old enough to know better.

- 2. To express purpose, consequence, etc.; as,—
  He came to assist his comrades.
- 3. Elliptically or absolutely; as,—
  He was petrified, so to speak.

He was petrified, so to speak.

To tell the truth, I do not believe it.

IV. The infinitive, usually with to, is used with a noun or a pronoun as the object of a verb; as,—

He maketh wars to cease. I asked him to sing.

In this construction, the noun or pronoun which is used with the infinitive as the object of the verb is called the subject of the infinitive. The subject of an infinitive is in the objective case.

a

w

110

aa

aa

A few simple verbs, such as *let*, *hear*, *see*, etc., take in this construction the simple infinitive; as, Let me go; I saw him fall.

V. The participial infinitive, like the noun, takes a possessive noun or pronoun; as,—

Much depends on Robert's receiving the message. His coming was not unexpected.

#### EXERCISE I.

Point out the infinitives in the following sentences, and state the construction of each: —

- 1. For him, to hear is to obey.
- 2. A sower went forth to sow.
- 3. He taught her to see new beauties in nature. IRVING.

- 4. I come not, friends, to steal away your hearts.
- 5. The sun is just about to set. Tennyson.
- 6. And many a holy text around she strews

  That teach the rustic moralist to die.—GRAY.
- 7. She heard the birds sing, she Saw the sun shine.—Longfellow.
- 8. After tarrying a few days in the bay, our voyagers weighed anchor, to explore a mighty river which emptied into the bay.—IRVING.
  - 9. And fools who came to scoff remained to pray.
  - 10. I did send to you for gold to pay my legions. SHAKESPEARE.
  - II. Hast thou a charm to stay the morning star? -- COLERIDGE.
- 12. Upon the landlord's leaving the room, I could not avoid expressing my concern for the stranger.—Goldsmith.
  - Is not to die.—Campbell.
  - 14. Beyond that I seek not to penetrate the veil. WEBSTER.

#### EXERCISE II.

- I. Write three sentences containing the simple infinitive without to.
- II. Write four sentences containing infinitives used like nouns.
- III. Write two sentences containing infinitives used like adjectives.
- IV. Write three sentences containing infinitives used like adverbs.

or a pro-

d with the ct of the case.

fall.

ssessive

ge.

nd state

IRVING.

### LESSON XCII.

# CONSTRUCTIONS OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles modify nouns or pronouns. They may be used -

I. Attributively; as, -

The rising sun hides the stars.

II. Appositively, usually equivalent to an implied clause; as,—

ruth, erusked to earth, shall rise again.

0

a

yo

br

en

III. Predicatively; as, -

Here it runs sparkling. He kept us waiting.

IV. Absolutely; as, -

The service having closed, we left the church.

#### EXERCISE I.

Parse the participles and the infinitives in the following sentences:—

- I. As we stood waiting on the platform, a telegraphic message was handed in silence to my companion. Holmes.
- 2. An uprooted tree came a sting along the current, and became entangled among the rock
  - 3. "Ah!" cried he, drawing back in surprise.
  - 4. The turban folded about his head
    Was daintily wrought of the palm-leaf braid.

- 5. At each corner of the building is an octagon tower, surmounted by a gilt ball and weathercock.—IRVING.
- 6. All the stories of ghosts and goblins that he had heard in the afternoon, now came crowding upon his recollection.
  - 7. I saw you sitting in the house, and I no longer there.
  - 8. The snow fell hissing in the brine, And the billows frothed like yeast.—Longfellow.
- 9. Upon his advancing toward me with a whisper, I expected to hear some secret piece of news.—Addison.
- 10. A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in pictures of silver. BIBLE.
- II. His father being at the warehouse, did not yet know of the accident.—George Eliot.
- 12. The wind having failed at sunset, the crew set to work with a will.
- 13. Here is a good place to test the qualities of a book as an out-door companion.
  - L4. There is not wind enough to twirl

    The one red leaf, the last of its clan,
    That dances as often as dance it can,
    Hanging so light, and hanging so high,
    On the topmost twig that looks up at the sky.—Coleridge.
- 15. The talent of success is nothing more than doing what you can do, well. Longfellow.
- 16. To reverse the rod, to spell the charm backward, to break the ties which bound a stupefied people to the seat of enchantment, was the noble aim of Milton.—MACAULAY.

used —

ause; as, —

ch.

following

legraphic HOLMES. Tent, and

#### SUMMARY.

#### RULES OF SYNTAX.

- 1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
- 2. The verbs be, become, appear, look, seem, etc., and the passive forms of the transitive verbs make, appoint, etc., take the same case after them as before them.
- 3. A noun added to another noun to explain or describe its meaning is in the same case by apposition.
- 4. A noun or a pronoun used absolutely with a participle is in the nominative case absolute.
- 5. A noun used in addressing a person or a thing, is in the nominative case of address.
- 6. A noun or a pronoun used, like an adjective, to modify another noun, is in the possessive case.
- 7. Transitive verbs in the active voice, and their participles and infinitives, take nouns and pronouns in the objective case.
- 8. Verbs like give, buy, teach, etc., take two objects the one direct, the other indirect.
- 9. The verbs *make*, *appoint*, *choose*, etc., are followed in the active voice by a direct object and an objective predicate.
- 10. Prepositions are followed by nouns or pronouns in the objective case.
  - 11. Nouns used adverbially are in the objective case.
  - 12. The subject of an infinitive is in the objective case.
- 13. A pronoun must agree in person, number, and gender with its antecedent.
  - 14. An adjective modifies a noun or a pronoun.
  - 15. A verb must agree with its subject in person and in number.
  - 16. An adverb modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

### LESSON XCIII.

# DIFFERENT USES OF THE SAME WORD.

Give a reason for the classification of each italicized word in the following examples:—

#### A11:

- I. All men are mortal. (Adjective.)
- 2. All joined in the song. (Adjective Pronoun.)
- 3. My all is lost. (Noun.)
- 4. I am all alone. (Adverb.)

#### As:

- I. He wrote as (Adverb of Degree) well as (Conjunctive Adverb) he could.
  - 2. As he was ambitious, I slew him. (Conjunction.)
  - 3. The days of man are but as grass [is]. (Conjunction.)
- 4. We are such stuff as dreams are made of. (Relative Pronoun.)

### Before:

- I. He stood before me. (Preposition.)
- 2. Look before you leap. (Conjunction.)
- 3. She had not entered this hall before. (Adverb.)

### Both:

- 1. Stretch out both thy hands. (Adjective.)
- 2. She both laughed and cried. (Conjunction.)

#### But:

- I. Fools admire, but men of sense approve. (Conjunction.)
- 2. Nought is heard but [except] the lashing waves. (Preposition.)

case. d the passive

describe its

ticiple is in

g, is in the

odify another

rticiples and

s — the one

wed in the e.

ns in the

se. gender with

in number. er adverb.

- 3. Man wants but little here below. (Adverb.)
- 4. There is no fireside, howsoe'er defended, But has one vacant chair. (Relative Pronoun.)

#### Else:

- I. Anybody else would consent. (Adjective.)
- 2. Where else could he go? (Adverb.)
- 3. I have no tears, else would I weep for thee. (Conjunction.)

S

jı

a

ret

### Enough:

- I. Enough is as good as a feast. (Noun.)
- 2. They have books enough. (Adjective.)
- 3. He has worked long enough. (Adverb.)

### Except:

- I. No one heard the alarm except me. (Preposition.)
- 2. I will not let thee go, except thou bless me. (Conjunction.)

#### For:

- I. We shall wait for the boat. (Preposition.)
- 2. I called, for I was wild with fear. (Conjunction.)

### However:

- 1. However busy he may be, he will aid you. (Adverb.)
- 2. These conditions, however, he could not accept. (Conjunction.)

### Like:

- 1. This box is like yours. (Adjective.)
- 2. He ran like a deer. (Adverb.)
- 3. I like to read. (Verb.)

#### Since:

- 1. I have not thought of the matter since. (Adverb.)
- 2. We have not heard from him since morning. (Preposition.)
- 3. Since the books are here, we will use them. (Conjunction.)

#### So:

- 1. So ended the conflict. (Adverb.)
- 2. The library was closed, so we returned home. (Conjunction.)

#### That:

- I. That book is lost. (Adjective.)
- 2. That is the cause of the trouble. (Adjective Pronoun.)
- 3. Here is the man that gave the order. (Relative Pronoun.)
- 4. I know that the work will be done. (Conjunction.)

#### The:

- I. The way was long. (Adjective.)
- 2. The more, the merrier. (Adverb of Degree.)

### LESSON XCIV.

### SELECTIONS FOR STUDY.

Parse the italicized words in the following exercises, giving a full explanation of the different constructions:—

#### EXERCISE T.

Whoever has made a voyage up the Hudson, must remember the Kaatskill Mountains. They are a dismembered

(Conjunc-

noun.)

sition.) onjunction.)

ction.)

(Adverb.) ept. (Con-

to the west of the river, swelling up to a noble height, and lording it over the surrounding country. Every change of season, every change of weather, indeed, every hour of the day, produces some change in the magical hues and shapes of these mountains; and they are regarded by all the good wives, far and near, as perfect barometers. When the weather is fair and settled, they are clothed in blue and purple, and print their bold outlines on the clear evening sky; but sometimes, when the rest of the landscape is cloudless, they will gather a hood of gray vapors about their summits, which in the last rays of the setting sun, will glow and light up like a crown of glory.—Washington Irving.

d

n

Se

cl

se

fiz he th

ac

ar

hi

wl

set

up

be

#### EXERCISE II.

"Have, then, thy wish!" He whistled shrill,
And he was answered from the hill;
Wild as the scream of the curlew,
From crag to crag the signal flew.
Instant, through copse and heath, arose
Bonnets and spears and bended bows;
On right, on left, above, below,
Sprung up at once the lurking foe;
From shingles gray their lances start,
The bracken bush sends forth the dart,
The rushes and the willow-wand
Are bristling into axe and brand,
And every tuft of broom gives life
To plaided warrior armed for strife.—Sir Walter Scott.

height, and change of hour of the and shapes If the good When the blue and ar evening be is cloudabout their, will glow

ING.

#### EXERCISE III.

All the inhabitants of the little village are busy. One is clearing a spot on the verge of the forest for his homestead; another is hewing the trunk of a fallen pine-tree, in order to build himself a dwelling; a third is hocing in his field of Indian corn. Here comes a huntsman out of the woods, dragging a bear which he has shot, and shouting to the neighbors to lend him a hand. There goes a man to the sea-shore, with a spade and a bucket, to dig a mess of clams, which were a principal article of food with the first settlers. Scattered here and there are two or three dusky figures, clad in mantles of fur, with ornaments of bone hanging from their ears, and the feathers of wild birds in their coal-black hair. They have belts of shell-work slung across their shoulders, and are armed with bows and arrows and flint-headed spears. These are an Indian sagamore and his attendants, who have come to gaze at the labors of the white men. And now rises a cry that a pack of wolves have seized a young calf in the pasture; and every man snatches up his gun o pike and runs ir chase of the marauding beasts. - NATHANIEL HAWTHORNE.

LTER SCOTT.

sl

w ac ca

or

Th or

rec ve

the

# PART FOURTH.

# STRUCTURE AND ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

# LESSON XCV

-00<del>203</del>00-

### STRUCTURE OF THE SENTENCE.

A sentence is the expression of a complete thought in words.

A sentence consists of two parts: the part of a sentence that shows what is spoken of is called the **subject**; the part that tells something about the thing spoken of is called the **predicate**.

The subject of a sentence consists of a noun (or of a word or words equivalent to a noun), alone or with additional words called adjuncts or modifiers. The subject noun without modifiers is called the grammatical, or bare, subject; as, *Birds* fly.

The grammatical subject with its modifiers is called the logical, or complete, subject; as,—

The inhabitants of the little village are busy.

The predicate of a sentence is a verb, alone or with adjuncts. The predicate verb without adjuncts is called the grammatical, or bare, predicate; as, The sun rose.

Some verbs do not form a predicate alone. A verb that requires an additional word to complete the predicate is called a verb of incomplete predication.

1. When the predicate is completed by the object of the action, the verb is called transitive; as, War brings sorrow.

2. When the predicate is completed by an adjunct describing the subject, the verb is intransitive (or in the passive voice), and the completing adjunct is called a complement; as, The sky is blue; The boy was called John.

An intransitive verb of incomplete predication is sometimes called a **copula**, since it connects or couples the subject with a word describing the subject; as,—

Washington was a patriot. She looks happy.

A transitive verb of incomplete predication is said to be factitive when it takes a complement which describes the direct object of the verb; as,—

They made him captain. We set the prisoner free.

The grammatical predicate with its adjuncts is called the logical, or complete, predicate; as,—

We are the prisoners of the night.

### ELEMENTS OF A SENTENCE.

The elements of a sentence are words, phrases, or clauses. A phrase is a combination of words performing a distinct office in a sentence, but not having a subject and a predicate; as,—

Birds in the thicket sing.

ir

se

fui

Phrases may be named according to their form: -

1. A phrase introduced by a preposition is called a prepositional phrase; as,

The key to pleasure is honest work.

2. A phrase introduced by an infinitive is called an infinitive phrase; as,—

The sun begins to gild the morning sky.

escribing the e), and the sky is *blue*;

etimes called with a word

e factitive bject of the

free.

he logical,

clauses.
stinct office
as,—

preposi-

infinitive .

3. A phrase introduced by a participle is called a participial phrase; as,—

The pillars supporting the roof are strong.

4. A phrase made up of an appositive noun and its modifiers is called an appositive phrase; as,—

He comes, the herald of a noisy world.

Phrases may be named according to the office performed by each:—

1. A phrase that performs the office of an adjective is called an adjective phrase; as,—

We heard the roar of the ocean.

2. A phrase that performs the office of an adverb is called an adverbial phrase; as,—

Once more he stept into the street.

3. A phrase that performs the office of a noun is called a substantive phrase; as,—

To climb steep hills requires slow pace at first.

A clause is a combination of words performing a distinct office in a sentence, and having a subject and a predicate; as,—

Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.

1. A clause that expresses the leading, or principal, thought of a sentence is called an independent or principal clause; as,—

They trimmed the lamps as the sun went down.

2. A clause that depends upon some other part of the sentence for its full meaning is called a dependent, or subordinate, clause; as,—

They trimmed the lamps as the sun went down.

#### PRINCIPAL ELEMENTS.

The grammatical subject and the grammatical predicate are the principal elements of a sentence; as,—

The shadows dance upon the wall.

#### SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS.

The modifiers of the principal elements in a sentence are called subordinate elements; as,—

The light of smiles shall fill again The lids that overflow with tears.

When the predicate verb is of incomplete predication, the object or the complement may be called a modifier of the grammatical predicate; as,—

- 1. The sexton rang the bell.
- 2. My mirror is the mountain spring.

### STRUCTURE OF SENTENCES.

Sentences may be simple, complex, or compound.

A sentence that expresses one thought is called a simple sentence; as,—

The march of the human mind is slow.

A sentence consisting of one principal clause and one or more subordinate clauses is called a complex sentence; as,—

Some murmur when their sky is clear.

A sentence made up of two or more independent members is called a compound sentence; as,—

I listened, but I could not hear.

te are the

are called

the object rammatical

a simple

or more

nembers is

#### EXERCISE I.

1. State the difference between the grammatical subject and the logical subject, and give examples of each. 2. State the difference between the principal elements and the subordinate elements of a sentence. Give examples

#### EXERCISE II.

- 1. Write three sentences containing adjective phrases.
- 2. Write three sentences containing adverbial phrases.
- 3. Write three sentences containing substantive phrases.

### LESSON XCVI.

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

A simple sentence is a sentence that expresses one thought.

THE SUBJECT.

The subject of a simple sentence may be -

I. A noun; as,—

Birds have many enemies.

II. A pronoun; as,—

We expected a different answer.

- III. An infinitive, or an infinitive phrase; as, -
  - I. To delay is dangerous.
  - 2. To say nothing is often better than to speak.
  - 3. Saying nothing is often better than speaking.

### Modifiers of the Subject.

The subject may be modified by-

I. An adjective; as, -

Still waters run deep.

- II. A noun or a pronoun in the possessive case; as,
  - 1. Edward's friends were present.
  - 2. My opinion is not changed.
- III. An appositive word or phrase.
  - I. I, Paul, have written it with mine own hand.
- 2. Hope, the balm of life, soothes us under every misfortune.
  - IV. A prepositional phrase, as adjective; as,—
    The paths of glory lead but to the grave.
    - V. A participle, or a participial phrase; as, -
      - 1. Having sung, she left the room.
      - 2. Advancing cautiously, he opened the door.
  - VI. An infinitive; as, -

His desire to learn is great.

### THE PREDICATE.

The predicate of a simple sentence may be -

- I. A complete verb -
  - 1. In a simple form; as, The sun rose.
  - 2. In a compound form; as, The sun has risen.
- II. An incomplete intransitive verb completed by-
  - 1. A noun; as, He was secretary.
  - 2. A pronoun; as, It was he.

- 3. An adjective; as, Iron is hard.
- 4. An infinitive, or an infinitive phrase; as, To see her is to love her.
- 5. An adverb, or an adverbial phrase; as, The moon is up; All the household are at rest.
  - III. An incomplete transitive verb with its object-
    - I. A noun; as, I hear music.

as, -

very mis-

- 2. A pronoun; as, We saw them.
- 3. An infinitive, or an infinitive phrase; as, She likes to read.
  - 4. Or objects; as, He gave John a book.
- 5. And objective complement; as, They made him treasurer; The heat turned the milk sour.

### MODIFIERS OF THE PREDICATE.

The predicate verb may be modified by -

- I. An adverb; as, -
  - The bells ring merrily.
- II. A prepositional phrase, as adverb; as,—
  He went towards the river.
- III. An infinitive, or an infinitive phrase; as,—
  They came to see the paintings.
- IV. An adverbial objective; as,—
  She remained two hours.
- V. A nominative absolute phrase; as,—

The war being ended, the soldiers returned.

The phrase, "the war being ended," gives a reason for the return of the soldiers. It is an adverbial phrase, being nearly equivalent in meaning to the adverbial clause, "as the war was ended."

When the subject, the object, or the complement consists of two or more connected terms, it is said to be compound; as,—

Games and carols closed the busy day. Learn to labor and to wait. Her voice was low and sweet.

Modifiers may be simple, compound, or complex—
A modifier consisting of a single word or phrase is simple.

The ship went slowly.

We spoke not a word of sorrow.

A modifier consisting of two or more connected words or phrases is compound; as,—

The ship went slowly and smoothly. His cohorts were gleaming in purple and gold.

A modifier consisting of a word or phrase with modifiers of its own is complex; as,—

The ship went very slowly.

Here rests his head upon the lap of earth.

A series of adjectives may form a compound or a complex modifier; as,—

1. He was an honest, temperate, forgiving man.

ob

2. Two large elm trees stood near the house.

In the first example the adjectives are co-ordinate, each modifying the same noun. Adjectives used in this manner may be separated by commas or joined by conjunctions.

In the second example the adjectives form a complex modifier. Thus—

ists of two

– npl**e.** 

or phrases

rold.

fiers of its

a complex

man.

se. ach modiy be sepa-

modifier.

Two modifies the whole expression large elm trees.

Large modifies elm trees.

Elm modifies trees.

#### EXERCISE I.

Write sentences in which the subject is-

- 1. A noun modified by an adjective.
- 2. A noun modified by a possessive pronoun.
- 3. A noun modified by an appositive phrase.
- 4. A noun modified by a prepositional phrase.
- 5. A pronoun modified by a participial phrase.
- 6. An infinitive phrase.

#### EXERCISE II.

Write sentences in which the predicate is -

- 1. A complete verb modified by an adverb.
- 2. A complete verb modified by a prepositional phrase.
- 3. A complete verb modified by an infinitive phrase.
- 4. A complete verb modified by an adverbial objective.
- 5. An intransitive verb completed by a noun.
- 6. An intransitive verb completed by a pronoun.
- 7. An intransitive verb completed by an adjective.
- 8. An intransitive verb completed by an infinitive.
- 9. A transitive verb with an infinitive as a direct object.
- 10. A transitive verb with a direct and an indirect object.
- 11. A transitive verb with a direct object and an objective complement.

#### LESSON XCVII.

#### ANALYSIS OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

Analyze orally the following sentences, thus: -

- I. Tell the kind of sentence.
- 2. Name the subject and the predicate.
- 3. Tell what the subject consists of.
- 4. Tell what the predicate consists of.

Example I.— This old ship had been laden with immense wealth.

#### ORAL ANALYSIS.

sm

jec

adi

- 1. This is a simple declarative sentence.
- 2. The subject is this old ship; the predicate, had been laden with immense wealth.
- 3. The subject consists of the noun ship, with the adjectives this and old, of which old modifies ship, and this modifies old ship.
- 4. The predicate consists of the verb had been laden, modified by the adverbial phrase with immense wealth.

Or.

Write the analysis briefly as follows: -

WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

Simple Declarative Sentence.

I. - SUBJECT.

Subject . . . . . . . . . . . . This old ship.

Subject noun . . . . . . . . . . ship.

Modifiers of subject noun . . . { this. (Adjective.) old. (Adjective.)

### II. - PREDICATE.

Predicate . . . . . . . . . . had been laden with immense wealth.

Predicate verb . . . . . . had been laden.

Modifier of predicate verb . . . with immense wealth. (Adverbial phrase.)

# Example II. - The prospect of success seemed small.

### ORAL ANALYSIS.

- 1. This is a simple declarative sentence.
- 2. The subject is the prospect of success; the predicate, seemed small.
- 3. The subject consists of the noun prospect, modified by the adjective the and by the adjective phrase of success.
- 4. The predicate consists of the verb seemed, completed by the adjective small.

## WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

Simple Declarative Sentence.

### I. - SUBJECT.

### II. - PREDICATE.

Predicate . . . . . . seemed small.

Predicate verb . . . . seemed.

Complement . . . . small. (Adjective.)

h immense

been laden

jectives *this* d ship.

en, modified

Example III. — Having obtained the desired information, he left the room.

#### ORAL ANALYSIS.

- 1. This is a simple declarative sentence.
- 2. The subject is he having obtained the desired information; the predicate, left the room.
- 3. The subject consists of the pronoun he, modified by the participial phrase, having obtained the desired information.
- 4. The predicate consists of the verb left, completed by the object room, which is modified by the.

#### WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

#### Simple Declarative Sentence.

#### I. - SUBJECT.

Subject he having obtained the desired information	
Subject pronoun he.	
Modifier of subject pronoun Having obtained the desired information.	(Par-
ticipial phrase.)	

#### II. - PREDICATE.

th

th

ma

ful

Predicate								left the room.
Predicate	ver	в.						left.
Object								room. (Noun.)
Modifier	of o	bjec	t					the. (Adjective.)

### Example IV .- It is useless to deny the fact.

#### ORAL ANALYSIS.

- 1. This is a simple declarative sentence.
- 2. The grammatical subject is it, which stands for the logical subject, to deny the fact; the predicate, is useless.

ormation, **he** 

formation; the

by the parti-

d by the ob-

information.

ormation. (Par-

ne logical sub-

3. The logical subject is the infinitive phrase, to deny the fact, piaced after the verb.

4. The predicate consists of the verb is, completed by the adjective useless.

### WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

Simple Declarative Sentence.

### I. - SUBJECT.

Logical subject . . . . . . . To deny the fact. (Infinitive phrase.)

Grammatical subject . . . . . It.

### II. - PREDICATE.

Predicate . . . . . . . . . . . is useless.

Predicate verb . . . . . . . . . is.

Complement . . . . . . . . useless. (Adjective.)

### SENTENCES FOR ANALYSIS.

#### EXERCISE T.

- 1. The decision of the judge increased i.e irritation of the people.
- 2. The best honey is the product of the milder parts of the temperate zone. John Burroughs.
- 3. The captain's share of the treasure was enough to make him comfortable for the rest of his days.—HAWTHORNE.
  - 4. I stand upon my native hills again. BRYANT.
  - 5. Every man is a missionary for good or for evil.
  - 6. We are equally served by receiving and by imparting.
- 7. A low, white-washed room, with a stone floor, carefully scrubbed, served for parlor, kitchen, and hall.—Irving.

- 8. My friend, Sir Roger, being a good churchman, has beautified the inside of his church with several texts of his own choosing.—Addison.
  - 9. It is the glory of a man to pass by an offence.
- 10. The great secret of a good style is to have proper words in proper places. E. P. Whipple.

#### EXERCISE II.

- 1. Thinking it would be cold in the cave, we had brought warm wraps.
- 2. How strangely the past is peeping over the shoulders of the present!
  - 3. The words of mercy were upon his lips.
- 4. Chimney swallows have almost abandoned hollow trees for their nesting-places, even in our most thickly wooded areas, preferring our chimneys.

tive

a r

cla

- 5. Early next morning I went to visit the grounds.
- 6. Having been accustomed to the control of large bodies of men, I had not much difficulty in comprehending the situation.
- 7. Hundreds of other carriages, crowded with their thousands of men, were hastening to the great city.
- 8. The Stamp Act was a direct tax laid upon the whole American people by Parliament. John Fiske.
- 9. I see everywhere the gardens, the vineyards, the orchards, with the various greens of the olive, the fig, and the orange. C. D. WARNER.
- 10. A truly great man borrows no lustre from splendid ancestry.

rchman, has texts of his

ffence. have proper

e, we had

ne shoulders

hollow trees kly wooded

ounds.

ol of large

with their ty.

upon the

eyards, the ne fig, and

m splendid

11. Success being hopeless, preparations were made for a retreat.

12. To bear is to conquer our fate. - CAMPBELL.

### LESSON XCVIII.

### THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

A complex sentence is a sentence consisting of one principal clause and of one or more subordinate clauses; as,—

He who would search for pearls must dive below.

The principal clause expresses the leading or principal thought of a sentence, but it does not express the complete thought.

The subordinate clause performs the office of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb, and is usually introduced by a conjunction or by a relative pronoun.

## I. - SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

A clause that performs the office of a noun is called a noun clause or a substantive clause.

A substantive clause may be used -

1. As the subject of a verb; as,

That you have wronged me doth appear in this.

2. As a predicate nominative; as, —

The result was that the treaty was signed.

3. As the object of a transitive verb; as,—
He knows who wrote the letter.

4. As the **logical subject**, defining a foregoing introductory, or grammatical subject; as,—

It was a fortunate thing that we met him.

5. As the object of a preposition; as, —

The leader encouraged his men by what he said and by what he did.

Substantive clauses are introduced by the conjunction that, and by the words how, when, who, what, etc.

The conjunction *that* is often omitted when the noun clause follows the principal verb; as,—

I hope [that] he will succeed.

### II. -- ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

A clause that performs the office of an adjective is called an adjective clause; as,—

Sweet are the thoughts that savor of content.

I remember, I remember

The house where I was born.

Adjective clauses are introduced by the relative pronouns who, which, that, what, and by the adverbs when, where, whence, etc.

### III. — ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

A clause that performs the office of an adverb is called an adverbial clause.

An adverbial clause may denote -

1. Time, introduced by after, before, since, till, when, while; as,—
Let us live while we live.

an

2. Place, introduced by where, whence, whither; as,—

I shall remain where I am.

roductory, or

172.

aid and by

on that, and

clause follows

is called an

tent.

onouns who,

l an adver-

while; as,—

- 3. Manner, introduced by as; as,—
  The days of man are but as grass [is].
- 4. Degree, introduced by than, as; as,—

  My days are swifter than a weaver's shuttle [is swift].
- 5. Cause or Reason, introduced by because, for, since, as, that; as,—

Freely we serve, because we freely love. Since you desire it, I will remain.

Enough is as good as a feast [is good].

- 6. Purpose, introduced by that, lest; as,—
  Open the door that they may enter.
  Take heed lest ye fall.
- 7. Condition, introduced by if, unless, except, but; as,—
  I will go if you are ready.

  The house will be sold unless the money is paid.

  Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.

  It never rains but it pours.
- 8. Concession, introduced by though, although; as,—
  Though he works hard, he does not succeed.
  Although he spoke, he said nothing.

### EXERCISE I.-SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

Mention the substantive clauses in the following sentences, and tell how each is used:—

- 1. We can prove that the earth is round.
- 2. What he said was not understood.

- 3. That the work is well done is not to be denied.
- 4. The consequence was that the army gained a victory.
- 5. It is generally admitted that they acted with energy and foresight.
  - 6. He did not know what the message meant.
  - 7. The fact that he was absent is significant.
  - 8. But that I am forbid, I could a tale unfold.

### EXERCISE II. - ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

Point out the adjective clauses in the following sentences, and tell what each modifies:—

- 1. He that is giddy thinks the world turns round.
- 2. In the evening we reached a village where I had determined to pass the night.
  - 3. It was the time when lilies blow.
  - 4. The evil that men do lives after them.
  - 5. I had a dream which was not all a dream.
  - 6. He serves all who dares be true.
  - 7. Nature never did betray the heart that loved her.
- 8. One by one we miss the voices which we loved so well to hear.

# EXERCISE III. - ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

Mention the adverbial clauses in the following sentences, and state what each denotes:—

- 1. My punishment is greater than I can bear.
- 2. Make hay while the sun shines.
- 3. Since my country calls me, I obey.
- 4. He sleeps wherever night overtakes him.

enied. a victory. with energy

g sentences,

nd. had deter-

her. ed so well

tences, and

- 5. Forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.
- 6. Love not sleep, lest thou come to poverty.
- 7. He flourisheth as a flower of the field.
- 8. Whither thou goest, I will go.
- 9. Not as the conqueror comes
  They, the true-hearted, came.
- 10. It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven.
- 11. Though I be rude in speech, yet not in knowledge.
- 12. Your people are as theerless as your clime [is cheerless].

### LESSON XCIX.

### ANALYSIS OF COMPLEX SENTENCES.

To analyze a complex sentence —

- 1. Tell the kind of sentence.
- 2. Name the subject and the predicate of the sentence.
- 3. Tell what the subject consists of.
- 4. Tell what the predicate consists of.
- 5. Analyze the subordinate clause or clauses.

Example I.— That man is formed for social life is acknowledged by all.

### ORAL ANALYSIS.

- 1. This is a complex declarative sentence.
- 2. The subject is the noun clause, that man is formed for social life; the predicate, is acknowledged by all.
- 3. The predicate consists of the verb is acknowledged, modified by the adverbial phrase by all.

- 4. The subordinate clause is introduced by the conjunction that.
- 5. The subject of the subordinate clause is the noun man; the predicate, is formed for social life.
- 6. The predicate of the clause consists of the verb is formed, modified by the adverbial phrase for social life.

### WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

### Complex Declarative Sentence.

#### I. - SUBJECT.

Subject	That man is formed for social life.	(Noun clause)
	The social life,	LAVUIDIE CECETASP. 1

### II. - PREDICATE

Predicate							is	acknowledged	bv	all.
									/	

Predicate verb . . . . . . . is acknowledged.

Modifier of predicate verb . . . by all. (Adverbial phrase.)

### Subordinate Clause.

Introduced by the conjunction that.

### I. - SUBJECT.

Subject . . . . . . . . . . . man.

### II. - PREDIC ITE.

Predicate . . . . . . . . . is formed for social life.

Predicate verb . . . . . . . is formed.

Modifier of predicate verb . . . for social life. (Adverbial phrase.)

# Example II. - The fact that he was present is sufficient.

### ORAL ANALYSIS.

- 1. This is a complex declarative sentence.
- 2. The subject is the fact that he was present; the predicate, is sufficient.

nction that.

n man; the

is formed,

Voun clause.)

ent.

dicate, is

3. The subject consists of the noun fact, modified by the adjective the, and by the appositive noun clause that he was present.

4. The predicate consists of the verb is, completed by the adjective sufficient.

- 5. The subordinate clause is connected to the noun fact by the conjunction that.
- 6. The subject of the subordinate clause is he; the predicate, was present.
- 7. The predicate of the clause consists of the verb was, completed by the adjective present.

#### WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

### Complex Declarative Sentence.

#### I. - SUBJECT.

Subject. . . . . . . . . . . . . The fact that he was present.

Subject noun . . . . . . . . . fact.

Modifiers of subject noun . . . { the. (Adjective.) that he was present. (Appositive clause.)

#### II. - PREDICATE.

Predicate . . . . . . . . . is sufficient.

Predicate verb . . . . . . . . is.

Complement . . . . . . . . sufficient. (Adjective.)

#### Subordinate Clause.

Connected to the noun fact by the conjunction that.

I. — SUBJECT.

Subject . . . . . . . . . . . he.

#### II. - PREDICATE.

Predicate . . . . . . . . . . was present.

Predicate verb . . . . . . . . was.

Complement . . . . . . . . . present. (Adjective.)

Example III. - The people believed in him, because he was honest and true.

### WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

### Complex Declarative Sentence.

I. - SUBJECT.

Subject noun . . . . . . The people.

Subject noun . . . . . people.

Modifier of subject noun . . . the. (Adjective.)

II. — PREDICATE.

Predicate verb . . . . . . believed in him, because he was honest and true.

Modifiers of predicate verb . . . { in him. (Adverbial phrase.) because he was honest and true. (Adverbial clause of Reason.)

### Subordinate Clause.

Connected to the verb believed, by the conjunction because, expressing Reason.

I. — SUBJECT.

Subject . . . . . . . . . . . he.

II. - PREDICATE.

Predicate . . . . . . . . . . was honest and true.

Predicate verb . . . . . . . . . was.

Complement of predicate . . . . honest and true. (Adjectives connected by and.)

# Example IV .- Beware lest you fall.

### WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

Complex Imperative Sentence.

tl

I. - SUBJECT.

Subject . . . . . . . . . . . . [you] understood.

#### se he was

#### II. - PREDICATE.

Predicate . . . . . . . . . . . Beware lest you fall.

Predicate verb . . . . . . . . Beware,

Modifier of predicate verb . . . lest you fall. (Adverbial clause of Purpose.)

#### Subordinate Clause.

Connected to verb beware, by the conjunction lest, expressing Purpose.

Subject....you.

Predicate .....fall.

# Analyze the sentences in the following exercises: -

#### EXERCISE I.

- I. As we approached the house, we heard the sound of music.
- 2. Such a fortnight in the woods as I have been lightly sketching, will bring to him who rightly uses it a rich return.
- 3. If we seek to acquire the style of another, we renounce the individual style which we might have acquired.
- 4. "Good speed!" cried the watch, as the gate-bolts undrew.
- 5. So thick were the fluttering snow-flakes, that even the trees were hidden by them the greater part of the time.
- 6. I now found myself among noble avenues of oaks and elms, whose vast size bespoke the growth of centuries.
  - 7. Nothing is so dangerous as pride.
  - 8. We are happy now because God wills it. LOWELL.
- 9. A great black cloud had been gathering in the sky for some time past, although it had not yet overspread the sun.

est and true.

(Adverbial

g Reason.

d by and.)

- 10. Here I sit among my descendants, in my old arm-chair, and immemorial corner, while the firelight throws an appropriate glory round my venerable frame.—HAWTHORNE.
  - 11. He who sets a great example is great. VICTOR HUGO.
  - 12. I saw from the beach, when the morning was shining, A bark o'er the waters move gloriously on. MOORE.

#### EXERCISE II.

- I. The song that moves a Nation's heart Is in itself a deed.—Tennyson.
- 2. As I crossed the bridge over the Avon on my return, I paused to contemplate the distant church in which the poet lies buried.—IRVING.
- 3. We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness.
- 4. We can almost fancy that we are visiting him [Milton] in his small lodging; that we see him sitting at the old organ beneath the faded green hangings; that we can catch the quick twinkle of his eyes, rolling in vain to find the day; that we are reading in the lines of his noble countenance the proud and mournful history of his glory and his affliction.—MACAULAY.
- 5. When the woodpecker is searching for food, or laying siege to some hidden grub, the sound of his hammer is dead or muffled, and is heard but a few yards. It is only upon dry, seasoned timber, freed of its bark, that he beats his reveille to spring and woos his mate.—John Burroughs.

y old armthrows an wthorne. TOR HUGO.

as shining, — Moore.

ny return.

which the

art

at all men eator with fe, liberty,

iting him sitting at that we n vain to his noble his glory

or laying or is dead upon dry, s reveille

#### LESSON C.

#### THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

A compound sentence is a sentence made up of two or more independent members; as,—

The walls are high, and the shores are steep.

Each member of a compound sentence, by itself, forms a complete sentence, which roley be simple or complex; as,—

The Mayor was domb, and the Council stood As if they were changed into blocks of wood.

- 1. The Mayor was dumb. (Simple Sentence.)
- 2. The Council stood as if they were changed into blocks of wood. (Complex Sentence.)

The connective between the members may be omitted, but the relation between the members should be stated in the analysis; as,—

The night is chill, the cloud is gray.

To analyze a compound sentence—

- I. Tell the kind of sentence.
- 2. Name the different members, and tell how they are connected.
- 3. Analyze in order the different members of the sentence.

Example. — The merchants shut up their warehouses, and the laboring men stood idle about the wharves.

### ORAL ANALYSIS.

- r. This is a compound declarative sentence, consisting of two simple members connected by the copulative conjunction, and.
  - 2. The subject of the first member is the merchants; the predi-

cate, shut up their warehouses. The subject consists of the noun merchants, modified by the adjective the. The predicate consists of the verb shut, modified by the adverb up, and completed by the object warehouses. The object is modified by the possessive pronoun their.

3. The subject of the second member is the laboring men; the predicate, stood idle about the wharves. The subject consists of the noun men, modified by the phrase the laboring, of which laboring modifies men, and the modifies laboring men. The predicate consists of the verb stood, completed by the adjective idle, and modified by the adverbial phrase about the wharves.

### WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

# Compound Declarative Sentence.

Two members connected by the conjunction and.

### FIRST MEMBER.

### I. -- SUBJECT.

Subject noun . . . . . . . . . . . . . merchants.

Modifier of subject noun . . . . the. (Adjective.)

### II. - PREDICATE.

### SECOND MEMBER.

n

### I. - SUBJECT.

 of the noun onsists of the y the object conoun their. g men; the usists of the ich laboring edicate con-

and modi-

n.)

### II. - PREDICATE.

Predicate verb st	ood.
Complement id	lle.
Modifier of predicate verb al	oout the wharves. (Adverbial phrase.)

# Analyze the sentences in the following exercises: -

### EXERCISE I.

- 1. Every day is a little life; and our whole life is but a day repeated.
  - 2. The harvest truly is plenteous, but the laborers are few.
  - 3. They toil not, neither do they spin.
- 4. It is one thing to be well informed; it is another to be wise.
- 5. The ravine was full of sand now, but it had once been full of water.
  - 6. He touched his harp, and nations heard, entranced.
  - 7. The moon is up, and yet it is not night. Byron.
  - 8. Stay, rivulet, nor haste to leave

    The lovely vale that lies around thee.—BRYANT.
- 9. They had played together in infancy; they had worked together in manhood; they were now tottering about, and gossiping away the evening of life; and in a short time they will probably be buried together in the neighboring churchyard.—IRVING.
  - 10. Now stir the fire, and close the shutters fast. Cowper.

#### EXERCISE II.

Lay down the axe; fling by the spade;
 Leave in its track the toiling plough. — BRYANT.

- 2. I turned in my saddle and made its girths tight.
- 3. He assisted at their sports, made their playthings, taught them to fly kites and shoot marbles, and told them long stories of ghosts, witches, and Indians.—IRVING.
  - That was the grandest funeral
    That ever passed on earth;
    Yet no man heard the trampling,
    Or saw the train go forth.
- 5. But what chiefly characterized the colonists of Merry Mount was their veneration for the Maypole. It has made their true history a poet's tale. Spring decked the hall wed emblem with young blossoms and fresh green boughs; Summer brought roses of the deepest blush, and the perfected foliage of the forest; Autumn enriched it with that red and yellow gorgeousness which converts each wildwood leaf into a painted flower; and Winter silvered it with sleet, and hung it round with icicles, till it flashed in the cold sunshine, itself a frozen sunbeam.—HAWTHORNE.

### LESSON CI.

### SELECTIONS FOR ANALYSIS.

ı.

### SUBSTANTIVE PHRASES

(Infinitive).

- I. To do good should be the aim of all.
- 2. He hoped to win the prize.
- 3. He did not dare to take the trip.

ight. playthings, told them

of Merry
has made
e hall wed
ghs; Sume perfected
at red and
d leaf into
and hung

sunshine,

- 4. It is easy to decide the matter.
- 5. Strive to be usefully employed.
- 6. They are about to leave the city.
- 7. Study to acquire a habit of accurate expression.
- 8. We should rejoice to hear of the prosperity of others.
- 9. It is useless to deny the fact.
- 10. It is very difficult to lay down rules of conduct for others.
- 11. It would be absurd to make another attempt.
- 12. The proper business of friendship is to inspire life and courage.
- 13. One of the hardest things in this world is to see the difference between real dangers and imaginary ones.
- 14. He had the happy knack of starting interesting subjects, and saying all sorts of interesting things by the way.
- 15. It was his professed purpose to limit, as much as possible, the number of his wants.
- 16. To set something going is the most anybody can hope to do in this world.
  - 17. The best course is to confess the fault.
- 18. The great secret of a good style is to have proper words in proper places.
  - 19. It is a noble thing to reward evil with good.

#### II.

### SUBSTANTIVE PHRASES

(APPOSITIVE).

- 1. He went to his old resort, the village inn.
- 2. The harp, his sole remaining joy, Was carried by an orphan boy.

- 3. Spenser, the poet, lived in the time of Queen Elizabeth.
  - 4. It was the lark, the herald of the morn.
- 5. The church, a gray stone structure, stood near the corner.
- 6. Audubon, the naturalist, was fresh from his wanderings over the continent, from Labrador to the capes of Florida, and from the Alleghanies to the Rocky Mountains.
- 7. A bald eagle, the sovereign of these regions sat perched on a dry tree.
  - 8. These gay idlers, the butterflies,
    Broke to-day from their winter shroud.

#### III.

### ADJECTIVE PHRASES

### (PREPOSITIONAL).

- 1. I hear the sound of distant footsteps.
- 2. The key to the drawer is lost.
- 3. Charity covereth a multitude of sins.
- 4. The doors of the prison closed upon him.
- 5. The modest wants of every day The toil of every day supplied.
- 6. They have forgotten the language of their ancestors.

fr

w

m

ch

pe

- The sad and solemn night
   Hath yet her multitude of cheerful fires.
- 8. The shades of night were falling fast.
- 9. New are the leaves on the oaken spray.

of Queen

near the

s wandercapes of lountains. egions sat Io. He felt the cheering power of spring;
It made him whistle, it made him sing.

- II. What lessons of golden wisdom this old chair might utter!
  - 12. How fleet is a glance of the mind!

### IV.

# ADJECTIVE PHRASES

### (PARTICIPIAL).

- 1. Looking upward, they beheld the cause of the trouble.
- 2. Having obtained the information, he ceased questioning.
  - 3. They saw a small vessel, approaching the shore.
- 4. Down plunged the diver, and soon rose dripping from the water, holding the sea-shrub in his hand.
  - 5. All last night we watched the beacons Blazing on the hills afar.
- 6. With every puff of the wind the fire leaped upward from the hearth, laughing and rejoicing at the shrieks of the wintry storm.
- 7. In a corner of the room stands his gold-headed cane, made of a beautifully polished West India wood.
- 8. "'Tis some visitor," I muttered, "tapping at my chamber door."
- 9. Having lost the confidence of the people, he was compelled to resign his office.

incestors.

10. Fastening my eye upon a particular meadow-lily, I walked straight to the spot, bent down, and gazed long and intently into the grass.

#### v.

### ADVERBIAL PHRASES

### (PREPOSITIONAL).

- 1. He reaps the bearded grain at a breath.
- 2. Amidst the storm they sang.
- 3. Choose the timbers with greatest care.
- 4. A sycamore grew by the door.
- 5. The clock stood in the corner behind her.
- 6. Then Christabel knelt by the lady's side, And raised to heaven her eyes so blue.
- 7. They glided calmly down the tranquil stream.
- 8. The vine still clings to the mouldering wall.
- 9. Then my heart with pleasure fills,
  And dances with the daffodils.
- 10. The troops were marching through a valley.
- 11. He reads for information.
- 12. She ran quickly to the spot.

#### VI.

### ADVERBIAL PHRASES

## (PARTICIPIAL AND INFINITIVE).

- 1. The sun having risen, we began our journey.
- 2. Peace being concluded, I turned my thoughts again to the affairs of the school.
  - 3. Dinner being over, the guests left the room.

low-lily, I long and

- 4. The ship having sailed, we returned home.
- 5. Crowds came to behold the sight.
- 6. We are anxious to learn the result.
- 7. Success being hopeless, preparations were made for a retreat.
  - 8. And out again I curve and flow,
    To join the brimming river.

### VII.

# SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

(USED AS SUBJECTS).

- 1. What his decision will be is uncertain.
- 2. "Know thyself" is a comprehensive maxim.
- 3. That man is formed for social life is acknowledged by all.
  - 4. When he will arrive is not yet known.
  - 5. That he should succeed is not surprising.
  - 6. Whoever looks may find the spot.
  - 7. That you have wronged me doth appear in this.
  - 8. How he made his escape is a mystery.
  - 9. What is done cannot be undone.
  - 10. What in me is dark, illumine.

#### VIII.

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

(USED AS PREDICATE NOMINATIVES).

- 1. Children are what the mothers are.
- 2. Be what nature intended you for, and you will succeed.

again to

- 3. The result was that the troops were defeated.
- 4. Things are not what they seem.
- 5. Our hope is that the plan will be accepted.
- 6. The fact is that he is dissatisfied with the work.
- 7. The great and decisive test of genius is that it calls forth power in the souls of others.
- 8. His only chance of escape was that he should go overboard in the night.

y

tr

ki

to

do

sto

firs

not

hea

#### IX.

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

(USED AS OBJECTS).

- 1. Remember what has been done for you.
- 2. I know not what course others may take.
- 3. Learn from the birds what food the thicket yields.
- 4. I learned that he was a universal favorite in the village.
  - 5. He declared that he was the sole survivor.
  - 6. See that you can untie what you tie.
  - 7. We do not know how the matter will be decided.
  - 8. I did not understand what was said.
  - 9. His whole mind was occupied by what he had heard.
  - The breeze comes whispering in our ear,That dandelions are blossoming near,That maize has sprouted, that streams are flowing,That the river is bluer than the sky,That the robin is plastering his house hard by.
- 11. Nobody could expect that we should be satisfied with these arrangements.

ed.

work. hat it calls

should go

yields. te in the

cided.

nad heard.

owing,

эy.

sfied with

x.

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

(USED AS LOGICAL SUBJECTS).

- I. It is good for a man that he bear the yoke in his youth.
- 2. It has been truly said that he who sets one great truth affoat in the world serves his generation.
- 3. It is only by degrees that the great body of mankind can be led into new practices.
- 4. It is seldom that we learn how great a man is until he dies.
- 5. It was with extreme difficulty that he made his way towards the light.
- 6. It is not enough to do the right thing, but we must do it in the right way, and at the right time.
- 7. It is no easy matter to discover the exact spot where a sunken vessel lies.
- 8. It would be tedious to detail minutely the rest of this story.

#### XI.

# ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

- I. He who would be great in the eyes of others must first learn to be nothing in his own.
  - · 2. Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.
    - 3. Blessed is he who has found his work.
- 4. He is indeed the true enchanter, whose spell operates, not upon the senses, but upon the imagination and the heart.

- 5. They that have done this deed are honorable.
- 6. What is that sound which now bursts on his ear?
- 7. Few, few were they whose swords of old
  Won the fair land in which we dwell;
  But we are many, we who hold
  The grim resolve to guard it well.
- 8. He who plants an oak looks forward to future ages, and plants for posterity.

1

in fe

ente

- 9. To the attentive eye, each moment of the year has its own beauty; and in the same field, it beholds, every hour, a picture which was never seen before and which shall never be seen again.
  - 10. He is well paid that is well satisfied.

#### XII.

### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

(OF TIME).

- 1. As the last sentence fell from the lips of the reader, a loud shout went up.
- 2. While she was yet speaking, the sun rose in all its splendor.
  - 3. She was a phantom of delight
    When first she gleamed upon my sight.
- 4. Some prepared the mid-day meal, while others reposed under the shade of the trees.
- 5. When his host had left the room, Dolph remained for some time lost in thought.
  - 6. The sea-birds screamed as they wheeled around.

able. his ear?.

nis ear old ll;

uture ages, e year has

which shall

the reader,

ose in all

ers reposed

mained for

und.

7. The sun had set before the conflict ended.

8. Write to us as soon as you reach your destination.

9. Fear not, while acting justly.

10. I have not visited the city since you were here.

II. Small service is true service while it lasts.

Days brightly came and calmly went, While yet he was our guest.

### XIII.

### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

(OF PLACE).

I. Where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

2. Whither I go, ye cannot come.

3. Where thoughts kindle, words spontaneously flow.

4. The clouds rolled away to the east, where they lay piled in feathery masses, tinted with the last rosy rays of the sun.

5. Where the heart is well guarded, temptations cannot enter.

6. Cover the thousands that sleep far away; Sleep where their friends cannot find them to-day.

### XIV.

### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

(OF MANNER).

1. As the tree falls, so it must lie.

2. Everything looked just as he had left it.

Not as the conqueror comes They, the true-hearted, came.

- 4. Speak as you think.
- 5. Forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.
- 6. We all do fade as a leaf.
- 7. It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven.

#### XV.

lc

th

su

### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

(OF DEGREE).

- 1. Corruption wins not more than honesty.
- 2. No sooner did this idea enter his head, than it carried conviction with it.
  - 3. The nearer the dawn, the darker the night.
  - 4. The boy ran so fast that I could not overtake him.
  - 5. The result was better than I expected.
- 6. So far as my own observation goes, the farther one penetrates the sombre solitudes of the woods, the more seldom does one hear the voice of any singing bird.
  - 7. The more time he loses, the poorer he considers himself.
  - 8. The line is so long that it will reach the bottom.

### XVI.

### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

(OF CAUSE OR REASON).

- 1. We love him because he first loved us.
- 2. Since they are here, we must receive them.
- 3. Freely we serve, because we freely love.
- 4. They deserved respect; for they were good men as well as brave.

debtors.

en.

an it carried

take him.

farther one ne more sel-

ders himself. bottom.

5. Since you are acquainted with the facts, you can judge for yourself. 6. As he persisted in refusing help, I left him alone.

7. Our bugles sang truce; for the night-cloud had lowered.

8. As our proposal was rejected, we have nothing further to say.

#### XVII.

### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

(OF PURPOSE).

- 1. We sow that we may reap.
- 2. Beware lest you fall.
- 3. He labored earnestly that abuses might be reformed.
- 4. I repeated the order that there might be no mistake.
- 5. Let my people go, that they may serve me.
- 6. Come into the light, that I may see your face.
- 7. He spoke very severely, that he might discourage such practices.
  - 8. Love not sleep lest thou come to poverty.

### XVIII.

### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

(OF CONDITION).

- Speak clearly if you speak at all; I. Carve every word before you let it fall.
- 2. The bill will not become a law, unless the Governor signs it.

od men as

- 3. If he had feared difficulties, he would not have died an acknowledged leader of men.
  - 4. Had you not helped me, I should have failed.
- 5. If we were base enough to desire it, it is now too late to retire from the contest.
  - 6. If it bear the test, it will be accepted.
- 7. If I had not been acquainted with the facts, this would have led me into a great error.
- 8. Had he been absent, the motion would have been carried.
  - 9. This is strange if it be true.
  - 10. If we fail, it can be no worse for us.

### XIX.

### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

(OF CONCESSION).

- I. Though it was morning, the sun did not shine.
- 2. His knowledge, though not always accurate, was of immense extent.
- 3. The good which men do is not lost, though it is often disregarded.
- 4. He remained in school, though he was not able to work.

ave

fro

sit

⁴aı

he

car

tru

dal

- 5. Although I had so many interruptions, I completed the work in time.
- 6. Though the position of affairs has changed, there is still danger to be apprehended.
  - 7. Though he were present, it would make no difference.
  - 8. Though he slay me, yet will I trust him.

ot have died

ailed.

is now too

e facts, this

have been

hine. ate, was of

ough it is

not able to

completed

ed, there is

difference.

#### XX.

### THE ARROW AND THE SONG.

I shot an arrow into the air, It fell to earth, I knew not where; For, so swiftly it flew, the sight Could not follow it in its flight.

I breathed a song into the air, It fell to earth, I knew not where; For who has sight so keen and strong That it can follow the flight of song?

Long, long afterward, in an oak I found the arrow, still unbroke; And the song, from beginning to end, I found again in the heart of a lend.

-HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW.

#### XXI.

### RIP VAN WINKLE.

The great error in Rip's composition was an insuperable aversion to all kinds of profitable labor. It could not be from the want of assiduity or perseverance; for he would six on a wet rock, with a rod as long and heavy as a Tartar's lance, and fish all day without a murmur, even though he should not be encouraged by a single nibble. He would carry a fowling-piece on his shoulder for hours together, trudging through woods and swamps, and up hill and down dale, to shoot a few squirrels or wild pigeons. He would

never refuse to assist a neighbor, even in the roughest toil, and was a foremost man at all country frolics for husking Indian corn or building stone fences. The women of the village, too, used to employ him to run their errands, and to do such little odd jobs as their less obliging husbands would not do for them;—in a word, Rip was ready to attend to anybody's business but his own; but as to doing family duty, and keeping his farm in order, he found it impossible.

In fact, he declared it was of no use to work on his farm; it was the most pestilent little piece of ground in the whole country; everything about it went wrong, and would go wrong in spite of him. His fences were continually falling to pieces; his cow would either go astray, or get among the cabbages; weeds were sure to grow quicker in his fields than anywhere else; the rain always made a point of setting in just as he had some out-door work to do; so that though his patrimonial estate had dwindled away under his management, acre by acre, until there was little more left than a mere patch of Indian corn and potatoes, yet it was the worst-conditioned farm in the neighborhood.

- WASHINGTON IRVING.

tl

in

th

oı at he

or

ır

qι

th

B

#### XXII.

### THE POET'S SONG.

The rain had fallen, the Poet arose.

He passed by the town and out of the street,
A light wind blew from the gates of the sun,
And waves of shadow went over the wheat,

roughest toil,
for husking
comen of the
errands, and
ing husbands
was ready to
as to doing
he found it

work on his ground in the g, and would attinually fallor get among in his fields nt of setting that though his manageleft than a it was the

GTON IRVING.

street, un, eat, And he sat him down in a lonely place,
And chanted a melody loud and sweet,
That made the wild swan pause in her cloud,
And the lark drop down at his feet.

The swallow stopt as he hunted the bee,

The snake slipt under a spray,

The wild hawk stood with the down on his beak,

And stared with his foot on the prey,

And the nightingale thought, "I have sung many songs,

But never a one so gay,

For he sings of what the world will be

When the years have died away."—ALFRED TENNYSON.

### XXIII.

#### LEAVES.

The leaves, as we shall see immediately, are the feeders of the plant. Their own orderly habits of succession must not interfere with their main business of finding food. Where the sun and air are, the leaf must go, whether it be out of order or not. So, therefore, in any group, the first consideration with the young leaves is much like that of young bees, how to keep out of each other's way, that every one may at once leave its neighbors as much free-air pasture as possible, and obtain a relative freedom for itself. This would be a quite simple matter, and produce other simply balanced forms, if each branch, with open air all round it, had nothing to think of but reconcilement of interests among its own leaves. But every branch has others to meet or to cross, sharing with

them, in various advantage, what shade, or sun, or rain is to be had. Hence every single leaf-cluster presents the general aspect of a little family, entirely at unity among themselves, but obliged to get their living by various shifts, concessions, and infringements of the family rules, in order not to invade the privileges of other people in their neighborhood.

-John Ruskin.

### XXIV.

Woodman, spare that tree!

Touch not a single bough!
In youth it sheltered me,
And I'll protect it now.
'Twas my forefather's hand
That placed it near his cot;
There, woodman, let it stand,
Thy axe shall harm it not!

-GEORGE P. MORRIS.

li

n

Λ

ha al

# LESSON CII.

STUDY OF SELECTION.

THE GLADNESS OF NATURE.

I.

Is this a time to be cloudy and sad,

When our mother Nature laughs around;

When even the deep blue heavens look glad,

And gladness breathes from the blossoming ground?

H.

There are notes of joy from the hang-bird and wren, And the gossip of swallows through all the sky; The ground-squirrel gayly chirps by his den, And the wilding bee hums merrily by.

III.

The clouds are at play in the azure space,
And their shadows at play on the bright green vale,
And here they stretch to the frolic chase,
And there they roll on the easy gale.

IV.

There's a dance of leaves in that aspen bower,
There's a titter of winds in that beechen tree,
There's a smile on the fruit, and a smile on the flower,
And a laugh from the brook that runs to the sea.

v.

And look at the broad-faced sun, how he smiles
On the dewy earth that smiles in his ray,
On the leaping waters and gay young isles;
Ay, look, and he'll smile thy gloom away.

- WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT.

Read the first stanza. What does this stanza do? Read the first line of the question. How many reasons are given in this stanza for not being *cloudy* and *sad?* State each. What is meant by *our mother Nature?* Why is she said to be laughing?

Read the second stanza. What does the first line tell? What is a hang-bird? What kind of nest does it build? What is the second line about? What are the swallows doing? What does the squirrel do?

E P. Morris.

or rain is to

ts the general

g themselves.

, concessions.

not to invade

100d. John Ruskin.

g ground?

How does he chirp? Where does he chirp? What is the fourth line about? What is the meaning of wilding? What is the use of merrily?

Read the third stanza. What is the first line about? Name the phrases in this line and tell the use of each. What is meant by the azure space? What does their refer to in the second line? What were the shadows doing? Does the third line refer to the shadows or to the clouds? What does the fourth line refer to?

Read the fourth stanza. How many different things in this stanza are said to express pleasure? Name the different things and tell what actions are ascribed to them.

Read the last stanza. What is the reader directed to look at? What is the sun said to be doing? What word indicates the happiness of the earth? Of the waters? Of the isles? Why is the reader told to look at the sun?

### WRITTEN EXERCISES.

- 1. State the plan of this poem.
- 2. Copy the poem, and commit it to memory.

### LESSON CIII.

## STUDY OF SELECTION.

THE SNOW-STORM.

(From "Snow Bound.")

The sun that brief December day Rose cheerless over hills of gray, And, darkly circled, gave at noon A sadder light than waning moon. the fourth line use of merrily?
Name the meant by the line? What of the shadows

in this stanza and tell what

to look at? the happiness is the reader

ory.

Slow tracing down the thickening sky Its mute and ominous prophecy, A portent seeming less than threat, It sank from sight before it set.

A chill no coat, however stout,
Of homespun stuff could quite shut out,
A hard, dull bitterness of cold,
That checked, mid-vein, the circling race
Of life-blood in the sharpened face,
The coming of the snow-storm told.
The wind blew east; we heard the roar
Of Ocean on his wintry shore,
And felt the strong pulse throbbing there
Beat with low thythm our inland air.

Unwarmed by any sunset light
The gray day darkened into night,
A night made hoary with the swarm
And whirl-dance of the blinding storm,
As zigzag wavering to and fro
Crossed and recrossed the wingéd snow:
And ere the early bedtime came
The white drift piled the window-frame,
And through the glass the clothes-line posts
Looked in like tall and sheeted ghosts.

So all night long the storm roared on: The morning broke without a sun; In tiny spherule traced with lines

th

W

m

lin

de

m

th

ind

pu

me the

 $\mathsf{th}\epsilon$ 

Re

is

· im

W

Wh

cor The

obs

long

Of Nature's geometric signs, In starry flake, and pellicle, All day the hoary meteor fell; And, when the second morning shone, We looked upon a world unknown, On nothing we could call our own. Around the glistening wonder bent The blue walls of the firmament, No cloud above, no earth below, -A universe of sky and snow! The old familiar sights of ours Took marvellous shapes; strange domes and towers Rose up where sty or corn-crib stood, Or garden wall, or belt of wood; A smooth white mound the brush-pile showed, A fenceless drift what once was road; The bridle-post an old man sat With loose-flung coat and high cocked hat; The well-curb had a Chinese roof; And even the long sweep, high aloof, In its slant splendor, seemed to tell Of Pisa's leaning miracle.\* - John Greenleaf Whittier.

What statement is made in the first two lines? Where was the cheerless sun seen? When? What word describes the appearance of the hills?

To what is the light of the sun compared in the second statement? Why waning moon? What words in the third line describe the appearance of the sun at noon?

<sup>\*</sup> This line refers to the Leaning Tower of Pisa.

What is the third fact stated about the sun? What is meant by the thickening sky? What is the sun called in the seventh line? What is a portent? Tell what signs of the coming snow-storm are mentioned in the first eight lines.

Read the next ten lines. What is the first thing mentioned in these lines that indicated the approaching snow-storm? What shows the degree of the chill? Why would a coat of "homespun stuff" be more likely to shut out the chill than any other coat? What was the effect of the chill upon the face? Why? How did the wind indicate the coming of the storm? What is meant by the throbbing pulse of the ocean?

Read the next ten lines. When did it begin snowing? What is the meaning of hoary? To what does the use of the word swarm direct the attention? The word whirl-dance? What showed the depth of the snow at early bedtime?

Read the next nine lines. How long did the storm continue? Read the part in these lines descriptive of the snow-flakes. What is the meaning of pellicle? What does the use of the word shone imply about the state of the weather on the second morning?

Read the remaining lines. What is meant by the glistening wonder? What is the meaning of the line, No cloud above, no earth below? What is said about the old familiar sights? What did the sty or corn-crib resemble? The brush-pile? The road? The bridle-post? The well-curb? The well-sweep?

How does this description of a snow-storm accord with your own observations?

### WRITTEN EXERCISE.

Study carefully the foregoing description of a snow-storm, and then tell in your own words:—

(1) What indicated the coming of the snow-storm; (2) how long the storm continued; (3) its effects,

d towers

ed,

VHITTIER.

ere was the appearance

l statement? lescribe the

# LESSON CIV.

# RULES FOR CAPITAL LETTERS.

Ŧ.

The first word of every sentence should begin with a capital letter.

it

to

Ca

as,

II.

A proper noun should begin with a capital letter; as, Herbert, London.

Note. — When a proper name is made up of two or more words, each word should generally begin with a capital letter; as, New York, Yale College.

III.

Words derived from proper nouns should begin with capital letters; as, Christian, Roman.

IV.

The names of the days of the week and the names of the months should begin with capital letters; as, Monday, June.

V.

When a title is applied to an individual, or when it is used as part of a name, it should begin with a capital letter; as, The Mayor of Chicago, President Lincoln, Aunt Mildred.

VI.

The name of an association or of a political party, or of any special body of men, should begin with a capital letter; as, Sons of Temperance, Liberals, Foresters.

VII

Words naming particular things or events of special importance, should begin with capital letters; as, The Confederation of the Provinces, The Constitution of the Dominion.

#### VIII.

The important words in the title of a book, of a newspaper, or of any other composition, should begin with capital letters; as, Robinson Crusoe, Harper's Young People, My Trip to the Mountains.

All names and titles of the Deity should begin with capital letters; as, Lord, Creator, Father, The Supreme Being.

IX.

The pronoun I and the interjection O should be written with capital letters; as, O father, I see a gleaning light!

The first word of a direct quotation should begin with a capital letter; as, He replied, "Kindness wins friends."

The first word of every line of poetry should begin with a capital letter; as,—

"The curfew tolls the knell of parting day,
The lowing herd winds slowly o'er the lea,
The ploughman homeward plods his weary way,
And leaves the world to darkness and to me."

### MARKS OF PUNCTUATION.

I.

A complete sentence, not interrogative or exclamatory, should be followed by a period.

II.

Every abbreviated word should be followed by a period; as, Mr., Dr., Prof.

gin with a

letter; as,

ords, each word

begin with

mes of the onday, June.

when it is a capital ant Mildred.

party, or a capital

f special, The Con-

#### III.

The title of a composition, the address of a person on a letter, and the signature to a letter or other document, should be followed by a period.

#### IV.

An interrogative sentence should be followed by the interrogation point; as, Whither are you going?

### v.

An exclamatory word, phrase, or sentence should be followed by the exclamation point; as, Hark! I hear footsteps. O noble judge! What a wonderful gift he possesses!

### VI

Words or phrases in the same construction should be separated by commas; as, The lowlands are hot, damp, and unhealthy.

Note. — Two words in the same construction, or two short phrases connected by and, or, or nor, should not be separated by the comma; as, He was brave and patriotic.

### VII.

A transposed phrase or clause should generally be separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma; as, In a very short time, they had passed the spot. If we fail, you will be disappointed.

NOTE. — If the phrase is closely united with the sentence, the comma is not used; as, Beneath the window is a wooden bench.

w

#### VIII.

An explanatory phrase should be separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma or commas; as, Milton, the great English poet, was blind,

person on document,

d by the

should be hear foot-

hould be damp, and

es connected

be sepaas, In a ill be dis-

nma is not

om the

#### IX.

Words, phrases, or clauses placed between closely related parts of a sentence should be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, It was, in fact, the only thing to do.

### x.

The members of a compound sentence, when short and closely connected, should be separated by the comma; as, We found the box, but it was empty.

### XI.

When the members of a compound sentence are subdivided by the comma, they are usually separated by the semicolon; as, The little brook ran along, fausing here to form a pool; and then it hurried onward, as if in haste to reach the lake.

#### XII.

Every direct quotation should be enclosed by quotation marks. When the quotation is divided by other words, each part should be enclosed by quotation marks; as, "The greatest of faults," says Carlyle, "is to be conscious of none."

#### XIII.

If a quotation is short and not formally introduced, it should be separated from the preceding part of the sentence by a comma; as, Agassiz once said, "I have no time to waste in making money."

#### XIV.

When a quotation is formally introduced by thus, as follows, these words, or some similar expression, it should be preceded by a colon; as, Agassiz replied as follows: "I have no time to waste in making money."

#### XV.

The name of a person addressed should be separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma or commas; as, Where are you going, Paul? Come, Frank, the boat is ready.

### RULES FOR PLURALS.

T.

Add s to the singular of most nouns, to form the plural; as, bird, birds; paper, papers.

TT

When the singular ends in a sound that does not unite easily with the sound of s, some nouns add es to the singular, to form the plural; as, glass, glasses; box, boxes; watch, watches; dish, dishes.

#### TTT

Some nouns ending in f or fe, change f or fe to ves, to form the plural; as, leaf, leaves; knife, knives.

ci

#### IV.

Some nouns ending in y, change y to ies, to form the plural; as, fly, flies; city, cities; army, armies.

#### v.

When a noun ends in y, if a, e, or o comes before the y, add s to the singular, to form the plural; as, day, days; journey, journeys; toy, toys.

#### VI.

Some nouns form their plurals in irregular ways; as, man, men; mouse, mice; child, children.

separated commas; s ready.

plural;

ot unite the sins; watch,

ves, to

rm the

ore the y, days;

ys; as,

### VII.

Some nouns have the same form in the singular and in the plural; as, sheep, deer, trout, cannon.

### RULES FOR POSSESSIVES.

I.

Add the apostrophe (\*) and s to a singular noun, to form the possessive; as, day, day's; sister, sister's.

#### II.

Add the apostrophe (') to a plural noun ending in s, to form the possessive; as, days, days'; sisters, sisters'.

#### III.

Add the apostrophe (') and s to a plural noun not ending in s, to form the possessive; as, women, women's; children, children's.

# LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

@ .				. ,				At o	r to.
A.B.	or :	B.A			Ba	che	lor	of A	rts.
Acct	٠.						A	Acco	unt.
A.D.	•		In t	he	yea	ro	of ou	ır L	ord.
Ala.	-						A	laba	ma.
Alb.							_	Albe	rta.
Alg.							1	Non	ma
A.M.,	Be	fore	no	on (	(an	te	mer	idie	m).
A.M.		. I	n tł	ie y	ear	of	the	wo.	rld.
A.M.	or I	M.A	٠	Ĭ.	M	as	ter d	of A	rts.
Anon						A	non	vmc	nis.
Ark.							Ar	kans	as.
Ariz.					rizo			rrito	
Assan	١.					A	Assa	nibo	nia.
Ath.								aba	
Aug.								lugu	
Ave.							Ā	ven	ne
B.C.								Chri	
B.C.				B				umb	
Bp.								isho	
Cal.								ifori	
Capt.								ptai	- 1
Co								ipan	
Co.								ount	
C.O.D.							Del	liver	y.
Col								lone	
colo. o						. (		orad	
								lleg	
onn						Tor		cticu	
					```	-01			260

Cor.	Se	С.,	Co	rre	esn	one	lin	œ	Sec	rotan	
Cr.					ъ	0	4111	5	Jeci	Cred	)
Cr.		Ĭ	•	•	•	•	•	•		edito	I
Ct		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	Cre	aito	1
D.C.	·	•	•	r					2.1	Cen	1
D.D.	•	•	•	A.	ופני	uic	10	1 (	~oiu	mbi	a
Dec	•	•	•	^	D	oct	or	01	Div	init	y
Dec.	•	•	•	•	•	•		. L	ece:	mbe	r
Del.	LI.	•	. 1	٠,	. •	:	•	. ]	Dela	war	3
Del.,	пе	or	sne	e d	lrev	w it	į ( <i>1</i>	Oe	line	avit	)
do.	٠	•	٠	•	1	he	sa	m	e ( <i>d</i>	itto)	).
Dr.	•	•	•	٠	٠	٠	•		. De	bto	Ċ,
Dr	•	•	•	•	•	•			. Do	octor	
Ei	•									Fact	
e.g	Fo	r ez	kan	ıpl	e (	exe	m	pli	gra	tia)	
Esq.	•		•	•					Esq	uire	
etc. o	r &	c.,									
_		A	nd	ot	her	s;	ar	nd	so f	orth	
Ex.								F	Exam	nple.	
<b>F.</b> or 1	Fah	ır.,								•	
		Fal	ire	nh	eit	(th	ıer	mo	ome	ter).	
Feb.	•							F	ebru	ıarv.	
Fla.								-	Flor	rida	
Fri.									Fri	day	
F.R.S.	, F	ello	w	of ·	the	R	ov:	al.	Soci	iatu	
Ga.								٠.	Gen	roria	
Gen.					•	•	•	à	Conc	gia	
Gov.						•		C	JCIIC	na.	
GovG	len.			(	301	·	na	r C	Conc	IOF.	
Hon.		•				v (-1.	i Di	1-0	Tene	La.	
		•	•		•	•	17	or	iora	Die.	

Idaho Idaho.	Mrs Mistress.
Ill Illinois.	Ms Manuscript.
Ind Indiana.	Mss Manuscripts.
Ind. T Indian Territory.	Mt Mount.
inst., Instant — the present month.	N North.
Iowa or Ia lowa.	N.A North America.
Jan January.	N.B Note well (nota bene).
Jr. or Jun Junior.	N.B New Brunswick.
Kans. or Kan Kansas.	Nebr. er Neb Nebraska.
Kee Keewatin.	Nev Nevada.
Ky Kentucky.	N.C North Carolina.
La Louisiana.	N. Dak North Dakota.
Lab Labrador.	N.F.L Newfoundland.
L.I Long Island	N.H New Hampshire.
Lieut Lieutenant.	N.J New Jersey.
LieutCol Lieutenant-Colonel.	N. Mex New Mexico.
LieutGen Lieutenant-General.	No Number.
LieutGov Lieutenant-Governor.	Nov November.
LL.D Doctor of Laws.	N.S Nova Scotia.
M Noon (meridies).	N.Y New York.
MajGen Major-General.	N.W.T Northwest Territories.
Man Manitoba.	Ohio or O Ohio.
Mass Massachusetts.	Oct October.
M.C Member of Congress.	Okla. T Oklahoma Territory.
M.D Doctor of Medicine.	Ont Ontario.
Md Maryland.	Or Oregon.
Me Maine.	p Page.
Messrs Gentlemen (Messieurs).	Pa. or Penn Pennsylvania.
Mich Michigan.	per cent,
Minn Minnesota.	By the hundred (per centum).
Miss Mississippi.	Ph.D Doctor of Philosophy.
Mlle Mademoiselle.	Pinx., He or she painted it (Pinxit).
Mme Madame.	P.M Afternoon (post meridiem).
Mo Missouri.	P.M Postmaster.
Mon Monday.	P.O Post-office.
Mont, Montana.	<b>pp.</b> Pages.
M.P Member of Parliament.	Pres President.
Mr Mister.	a rob riesident.

ing Secretary.
. Credit.

Creditor.
Cent.
of Columbia.
or of Divinity.

. December. . Delaware.

(Delineavit). same (ditto).
. Debtor.

. . Doctor. . . East.

mpli gratia).
Esquire.

and so forth.
. Example.

ermometer).
February.
Florida.

Friday.

Georgia.General.Governor.

or-General.

Honorable.

-	
Pro tem.,	Tenn
For the time being (pro tempore).	
prox Next month (proximo).	l exas.
De	I Trilling
P.S. · . Posteript (post scriptum).	Tues.
Que Ouebec.	i uesday.
Rev Reverend.	Last month (ultimo).
R.I. Dhode Lit.	U.S United States
Niloge Island	U.S.A United States Army.
R.R Railroad.	U.S.A. United States of America.
Rt. Rev Right Reverend.	U.S.M United States Mail
S South.	States Mail.
Sag South.	U.S.N United States Navy.
Sas Saskatchewan.	Utah Utah.
Sat Saturday.	Va.
Sept September.	virginia.
Sr. or Sen Senior.	. vermont
S.C. South Corolina	W West
. South Carolina.	Wed Wednesday.
S. Dak South Dakota.	w cullesuav.
St Street.	Wisconsin.
Sun Sunday.	Wash Washington.
Supt Superintendent	wyo Wyoming
Supt Superintendent.	W. Va West Virginia.
·	west virginia.

ne 14

14 14 tiv us re

# INDEX.

Absolute construction, 182. Abstract noun, 27; formation of, 27. Acceptance, 178; form of, 178. Active forms of verbs, 126. Active voice, 91, 126. Address, nominative of, 182. Adjectives, 9, 20; classes of, 75, 76; descriptive, 75; limiting, 75; compound, 76; interrogative, 65; participial, 98; comparison of, 78, 103; construction of, 188, 190; attributive, 188; appositive, 189; predicative, 189; review of, 83, 84; parsing of, 84. Adjective clause, 220. Adjective phrase, 207. Adjective pronoun, 57. Adjuncts, 205. Adverbs, 12, 20; classes of, 142, 143; of time, 142; of place, 142; of manner, 142; of degree, 142; modal, 142; simple, 143; conjunctive, 143; interrogative, 143; expletive, 142; yes and no, 143; phrases, 143; identical in form with adjec-

. tives, 146; comparison of, 143;

review of, 147.

use of, 146; parsing of, 143, 144;

Tennessee.
Texas.
Thursday.
Tuesday.
onth (ultimo).
United States.

d States Army. es of America. ed States Mail. d States Navy. . . . Utah.

Virginia.

Vermont.

· West.

Wednesday.

Wisconsin.

Washington.

. Wyoming.

Vest Virginia.

time, 220; place, 220; manner, 221; degree, 221; cause or reason, 221; purpose, 221; condition, 221; concession, 221. Adverbial conjunction, 143. Adverbial object, 183. Adverbial phrase, 207. Adversative conjunctions, 154. Advertisements, 172-175; for articles lost, 172; for articles found, 173; for help, 173; for situations, 174; forms of, 172-174. Alphabetical list of irregular verbs, 106, 109. Alternative conjunctions, 155. Analysis of sentences, 214-248; simple, 214-218; complex, 223-228; compound, 229-232. Antecedent of pronoun, 60. Apposition, 182. Appositive, 182. Appositive phrase, 207. Articles, 76; definite, 76; indefinite, 76; use of, 76. Auxiliary verbs, 102, 111-125: have, 113, 114; do, 115; shall, 116-118; will, 116-118; be, 118-121; can,

Adverbial clause, 220, 221; denoting

122; may, 123; must, 123; should and would, 123, 124.

Bare subject, 205.
Bare predicate, 205.

Be, 118-120; forms of, 118-120; as auxiliary, 119, 120; use in the passive voice, 119; use in the progressive form, 120; as an independent verb, 120; to express existence, 120; as a copula, 120. Bills, 168-170; forms of, 168, 169.

Can, forms of, 122; use of, 122.
Capital letters, rules for, 25, 26, 165, 254, 255.

Case, 38; nominative, 39; possessive, 39; objective, 39.

Causal conjunctions, 155.

Choice, of adjectives, 82; of prepositions, 149-151.

Clause, 59, 207; independent or principal, 59, 207; dependent or subordinate, 59, 207; adjective, 220, 222; adverbial, 220, 221, 222; substantive, 219, 220, 221.

Collective noun, 26.

Comma, use of, 159, 160, 161, 162, 165, 262.

Common gender, 35. Common noun, 26.

Comparison, 79, 83; of adjectives, 78-83; positive degree, 79; comparative degree, 79, 80; use of comparative degree, 79; formation of the comparative, 79; superlative degree, 79, 80; use of superlative degree, 79; formation of

the superlative, 79; irregular, 80; of adverbs, 143.

Co

Co

Co

Co

Co

De

De

S

r

t

Dei

Dei

De

De

Des

Diff

2

10

20

f

SI

20

Dire

Do,

to

pı

tic

11

Eler

W

cla

su

Excl

Expl

7

Complement, 206.

Complete subject, 205.

Complete predicate, 206.

Complex sentences, 208, 219-228; structure of, 219-223; analysis of, 223-228.

Composition, 51, 64, 74, 87, 179, 180. Compound adjectives, 76.

Compound conjunctions, 155.

Compound modifiers, 212.

Compound personal pronouns, 55-57; formation of, 56; use as reflexives, 56; use to express emphasis, 56; decleasion of, 56.

Compound possessives, 42.

Compensal prepositions, 148.

Compound relative pronouns, 61; formation of, 61.

Compound sentences, 229-232; structure of, 229; analysis of, 229-231.

Conjugation of the verb, 126-129; active voice, 126-128; passive voice, 128; progressive forms, 129.

Conjunctions, 16, 20; classes of, 154, 155; co-ordinating, 154; copulative, 154; adversative, 154; alternative, 155; causal, 155; correlatives, 155; subordinating, 155; compound, 155; parsing of, 154, 155; review of, 157.

Conjunctive adverbs, 143.

Constructions, 181; of nouns, 181-185; of pronouns, 185-188; of adjectives, 188-190; of verbs, 190-192; of infinitives, 193-195; of participles, 196, 197. irregular, 80;

o. 08, 219–228 ; ; analysis of,

87, 179, 180. 6.

, 155.

nouns, 55–57; as reflexives, mphasis, 56;

12. 148. puns, 61 ; for-

1-232; structf, 229-231. b, 126-129;

assive voice, , 129. sses of, 154, 54; copula-

154; alter-5; correlating, 155; ng of, 154,

ouns, 181-35-188; of verbs, 190-3-195; of Co-ordinating conjunctions, 154. Copula, 120, 206. Copulative conjunctions, 154. Correlatives, 155. Correct use of pronouns, 67.

Declarative sentence, 1.

Declension, 39; of nouns, 39: of personal pronouns, 52, 53; of compound personal pronouns, 56; of the relative who, 61.

Defective verb, 106.

Definite article, 76.

Degrees of comparison, 79; positive, 79; comparative, 79; superlative,

79. Dependent clause, 59, 207. Descriptive adjective, 75.

Different uses of the same word, 199-201; all, 199; as, 199; before, 199; both, 199; but, 199; else, 200; enough, 200; except, 200; for, 200; however, 200; like, 200; since, 201; so, 201; that, 201; the,

201. Direct quotations, 164.

Do, used as an auxiliary verb, 115; to express emphasis, 115; to express negation, 115; to ask a question, 115; as an independent verb, 115.

Elements of a sentence, 206–208; words, 206; phrases, 206, 207; clauses, 206, 207; principal, 208; subordinate, 208.

Exclamatory sentence, 1. Expletive, 142.

Factitive verb, 206.

Feminine gender, of nouns, 35; of pronouns, 54.

Foreign words, plural of, 34.

Forms of verbs, 105-110; of be, 118

121; can, 122; have, 113-114

shall, 116-118; will, 116-118; may, 123; active, 126-128; passive, 128, 129; progressive, 129.

Future perfect tense, 102.

Future tense, 101.

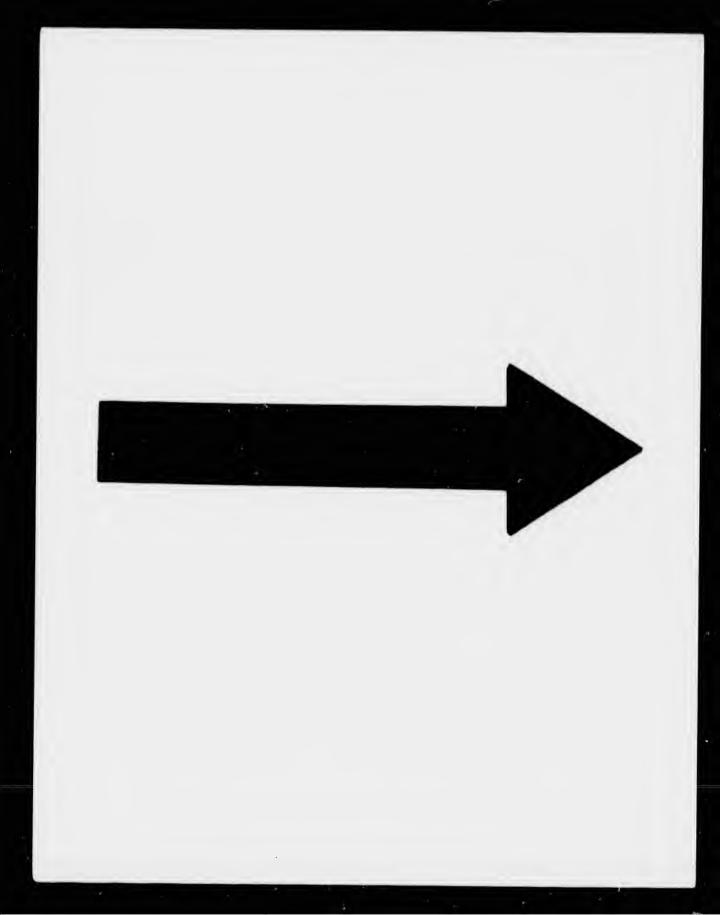
Gender, 34; masculine, 35; feminine, 35; common, 35; neuter, 35; of nouns, 34-37; of pronouns, 53, 54.

Gerund, 96. Grammatical predicate, 205 Grammatical subject, 205.

Have, 113, 114; forms of, 113; use as an auxiliary verb, 114; as an independent verb, 114.

Imperative mode, 94.
Imperative sentence, 1.
Impertect participle, 98.
Impersonal subject and object of verb. 186.
Indefinite article, 76.
Indefinite use of pronouns, 186.
Independent clause, 59, 207.
Indicative mode, 93.
Indirect object, 183.
Indirect quotations, 164, 165.
Infinitives, 95-97; simple, 95, 96; in ing or participial, 95, 96: con-

structions of, 193-195; as subject



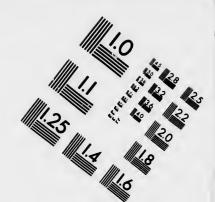
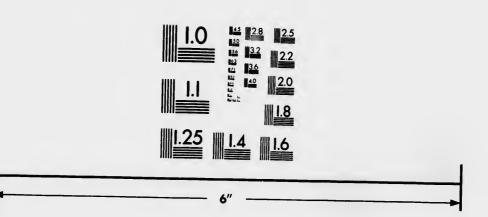


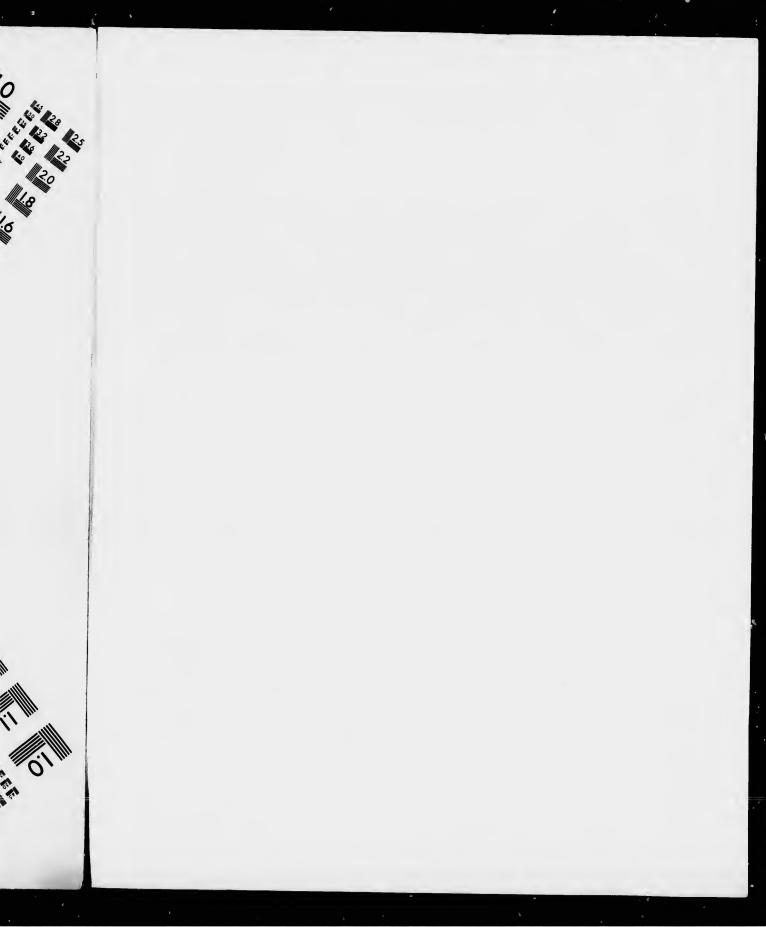
IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580 (716) 872-4503

STATE OF THE STATE



of verb, 193; as predicate nominative, 193; as object of verb, 193; as object of verb, 193; as object of preposition, 193; after the verbs *may*, *can*, etc., 193; as modifiers, 193; used to express purpose, 194; elliptically or absolutely, 194; with noun or pronoun as object of verb, 194; with possessive modifier, 194; parsing of, 136–138.

Infinitive in *ing*, 95, 96; constructions of, 193, 194.

Infinitive phrase, 206.

Inflection, 39.

Interjections, 17, 20, 158; parsing of, 158.

Interrogative adjectives, 65.

Interrogative adverbs, 143.

Interrogative pronouns, 65-69; use of, 65.

Interrogative sentence, 1.

Intransitive verbs, 88; made transitive, 92.

Invitations, 177, 178; forms of invitation, 177; of acceptance, 178; of regret, 178.

Lay and lie, use of, 130, 131.

Letters ordering books, 166; merchandise, 166; making applications, 167; miscellaneous, 179, 180; forms of, 166, 167.

Limiting adjectives, 75.

Logical subject, 205. Logical predicate, 206.

Masculine gender, 35; of nouns, 35; of pronouns, 53, 54.

May, 123; forms of, 123; use of, 123, 133.

Modal adverbs. 142.

Mode, 93; indicative, 93; imperative, 94; subjunctive, 94.

Modifiers, 205, 212; of subject, 210; of predicate. 211; simple, 212; complex, 212; compound, 212.

Neuter gender, 35; of nouns, 35; of pronouns, 35, 51.

C

P

Pa

Pa

Pa

Pa

Pa

Pa

Pa

Pe

Nominative absolute, 182.

Nominative of address, 182.

Nominative case, 39; subject nominative, 181; predicate nominative, 181; nominative absolute, 182; nominative of address, 182.

Notices of public meetings, 175; forms of, 175.

Nouns, 6, 20; classes of, 25-28; proper, 25; common, 26; collective, 27; abstract, 27; verbal, 27, 98; number of, 28-34; gender of, 34:37; case of, 38-45; constructions of, 181-185; as subject nominative, 181; as predicate nominative, 181; as objective predicate, 182; as appositive, 182; nominative absolute, 182; nominative of address, 182; as possessive, 183; as object of verb, 183; as object of preposition, 183; as indirect object, 183; as adverbial object, 183; parsing of, 45, 46; review of, 47, 48,

Number of nouns, 28-34; of pronouns, 53; of the adjectives this and that, 80; of verbs, 104.

123; use of, 123,

e, 93; impera-

re, 94. of subject, 210 ; simple, 212 :

pound, 212.

nouns, 35; of

182. , 182.

subject nomite nominative,

ibsolute, 182;

igs, 175; forms

es of, 25-28; n, 26; collec-7; verbal, 27,

4; gender of, 45; construc-

subject nomiicate nomina-

ive predicate, 82; nomina-

nominative of seessive, 183;

as indirect

erbial object, 6; review of,

34; of proljectives *this* 

, 104.

Object, 14, 38, 88; of prepositions, 14; of verb, 38, 88; direct, 183; indirect, 183; adverbial, 183.

Objective case, 39; object of a transitive verb, 183; object of a preposition, 183; objective predicate, 182; indirect object, 183; adverbial object, 183.

Objective predicate, 182.

Paragraph, The, 49.

Parsing, 45; of nours, 45, 46; of pronouns, 70; of adjectives, 84; of verbs, infinitives, and participles, 136-138; of adverbs, 143, 144; of prepositions, 148; of conjunctions, 155, 156; of interjections, 158

Participles, 97; present or imperfect, 98; past or perfect, 98; constructions of, 196, 197; used attributively, 196; used appositively, 196; used predicatively, 196; used absolutely, 196; parsing of, 136-138. Participial adjective, 98.

Participial infinitive, 96; how distinguished from the present participle and the verbal noun, 98; constructions of, 193, 194.

Participial phrase, 207.

Parts of speech, 19; summary of, 20.

Passive forms of verbs, 128, 129. Passive voice, 92, 119, 128.

Past participle, 98.

Past perfect tense, 101.

Past tense, 101.

Perfect participle, 98.

Person, of pronouns, 52; of verbs, 104.

Person and number of verbs, 104.

Personal pronouns, 52, 57; declension of, 52, 53; use of second person singular, 53; use of third person singular, 53, 54; use of possessive forms, 54; compound, 54, 56.

Phrases, 206, 207: prepositional, 206; infinitive, 206; participial, 207: appositive, 207; adjective, 207; adverbial, 207; substantive, 207; simple, 212; complex, 212; compound, 212.

Plural number, 29; of nouns, 29-34; two plurals, 32; of compound nouns, 33; of titles, 33; of letters, figures, and signs, 34; of nouns from foreign languages, 34.

Plural subjects, 191.

Possessives, 183.

Possessive forms, of nouns, 40, 42, 44.

Possessive case, 39, 183; of singular nouns, 40; of plural nouns, 41; of compound nouns, 42; of phrases, 42; of nouns denoting joint possession, 42; of nouns denoting separate possession, 43; possession indicated by the objective case with preposition, 44; phrases denoting a period of time, 44; names of things personified, 44.

Potential mode, 124, 137; parsing of verbs in, 137.

Predicate, 3; grammatical or bare, 205; logical or complete, 206.

Predicate adjective, 189.

Predicate nominative, 181, 182. Predicate noun, 181. Prepositions, 14, 20, 147; relations expressed by, 147, 148; compound, 148; parsing of, 148. Prepositional phrase, 206. Present participle, 98. Present perfect tense, 101. Present tense, 101. Principal clause, 59, 207. Principal elements of a sentence, 208. Principal parts of verb, 106. Progressive form of verbs, 120, 129. Pronouns, 7; personal, 52; relative, 59; adjective, 57; interrogative, 65; impersonal, 186; reflexives, 56; antecedent of, 60; constructions of, 185-187; agreement with antecedent, 64, 185; special uses of it, 186; case-relations, 187; correct use of, 167; review of, 69; parsing of, 70. Proper adjectives, 75.

Proper adjectives, 75.

Proper nouns, 25.

Public meetings, notices of, 175.

Punctuation, rules for, 255–258.

Quotation marks, 163.

Receipting bills, 169.
Receipts, 170–172; forms of, 171.
Reflexive use of pronouns, 56.
Regret, form of, 178.
Regular verbs, 105.
Review, 47, 69, 83, 141, 147, 157.
Relative pronouns, 59–64; antecedent of, 60, 64; use of, 60, 61; declension of, 61; compound, 61.

Relative clause, 59; explanatory, 61; restrictive, 61.

Rules, for capital letters, 254, 255; marks of punctuation, 255-258; comparison of adjectives, 79; plural forms of nouns, 29-34, 258, 259; possessive forms of nouns, 40-42, 265; singular and plural forms of verbs, 191; of syntax, 198.

Selections, for analysis, 232-248; for parsing, 201-203; for study, 71, 85, 151.

S

S

S

T

T

Sentences, 1, 205-232; declarative, 1; imperative, 1; interrogative, 1; exclamatory, 1; subject of, 3, 205; predicate of, 3, 205, 206; structure of, 205-213, 219-222, 229; elements of, 206-208; simple, 208-218; complex, 208, 219-22 compound, 208, 229-232; analysis of, 214-218, 223-248.

Shall, forms of, 116; use of, 116.

Simple adverb, 143.

Simple infinitive, 95, 96; constructions of, 193, 194.

Simple modifiers, 212.

Simple sentence. 203-218; subject of, 209; modifiers of subject, 210; predicate of, 210, 211; modifiers of predicate, 211; analysis of, 214-218.

Singular number, 29.
Singular subjects, 191.
Sit and set, use of, 131, 132.
Stop and stay, use of, 135, 136.
Structure of the sentence, 205-213;

explanatory, 61;

tters, 254, 255; ition, 255-258;

ectives, 79; plu-

ns, 29-34, 258,

orms of nouns,

lar and plural

s, 232–248; for

for study, 71,

; declarative, iterrogative, i;

ject of, 3, 205;

5, 206; struct-

208; simple,

208, 219-22

9-232; anai,

248. se of, 116.

96; construc-

subject, 210;

; modifiers of ysis of, 214-

132. 15, 136.

ce, 205-213;

219-222, 229; simple, 209-213; complex, 219-223; compound, 229. Study of selections, 71, 85, 151.

Subject, 3, 205; grammatical or bare, 205; logical or complete, 205; of a verb, 11, 88, 181; of an infinitive, 194.

Subject nominative, 181.

Subjunctive mode, 94.

Subordinate clause, 59, 207.

Subordinate elements of a sentence, 208.

Subordinating conjunctions, 155.

Substantive clause, 219; used as the subject of a verb, 219; as predicate nominative, 219; as object of a transitive verb, 219; as logical subject, 220; as object of a preposition, 220.

Substantive phrase, 207.

Summary, of parts of speech, 20; of rules of syntax, 198.

Syntax, 181; rules of, 198.

Telegraphic despatches, 176.
Tense, 101, 103; present, 101; past, 101; future, 101; present perfect.

101; future, 101; present perfect, 101; past perfect or pluperfect,

101; future perfect, 102; formation of, 102.

There, as an expletive, 142.

Think; guess; expect; use of, 134. To, with the infinitive, 96.

Transitive verbs, 88.

Verbal nouns, 27, 98.

Verbs, 11, 20; regular, 105; irregular, 105; defective, 106; principal parts of, 106; transitive, 88; intransitive, 88; of incomplete predication, 205, 206; auxiliary, 102, 111-125; independent, 114; subject of, 11, 88; object of, 38, 88; complement of, 206; mode of, 93, 94; tense of, 101-103; person and number of, 104; agreement with subject, 190-192; forms of, 105, 113, 116, 118-120, 122, 123; conjugation of, 126-129; list of irregular verbs, 106, 109; parsing of, 136-138; review of, 141.

Voice, 91; active, 91; passive, 92, 119, 128.

Will, forms of, 116; use of, 116. Yes and no, as adverbs, 143.

